Markus Kröll BSc

# Analysis of a Key Agreement Protocol Based on Higher Order Diophantine Equations 

## MASTER THESIS

written to obtain the academic degree of a

Master of Science (MSc)

Master's programme Mathematical Computer Science
submitted to the university

## Graz University of Technology

Supervisor:
O.Univ.-Prof. Dr.phil. Robert Tichy

Department of Analysis
and Computational Number Theory

## EIDESSTATTLICHE ERKLÄRUNG

## AFFIDAVIT

Ich erkläre an Eides statt, dass ich die vorliegende Arbeit selbstständig verfasst, andere als die angegebenen Quellen/Hilfsmittel nicht benutzt, und die den benutzten Quellen wörtlich und inhaltlich entnommenen Stellen als solche kenntlich gemacht habe. Das in TUGRAZonline hochgeladene Textdokument ist mit der vorliegenden Masterarbeit identisch.

I declare that I have authored this thesis independently, that I have not used other than the declared sources/resources, and that I have explicitly indicated all material which has been quoted either literally or by content from the sources used. The text document uploaded to TUGRAZonline is identical to the present master's thesis.

This document is set in Palatino, compiled with pdfEATEXze and Biber.
The LATEX template from Karl Voit is based on KOMA script and can be found online: https://github.com/novoid/LaTeX-KOMA-template

## Abstract

In 2011, Harry Yosh [42] proposed a new cryptographic key-exchange protocol based on Diophantine equations. Other than previously presented security protocols using Diophantine equations, Yosh imposed very little restrictions on the used parameters. This thesis aims to analyze Yosh's protocol as well as to restrict the set of public and private keys in order to maintain security and enable an efficient implementation of the key exchange. After presenting a modern version of the proof of Hilbert's tenth problem, which points out the hardness of solving Diophantine equations, a brief review of existing cryptographic schemes based on Diophantine equations is given. We then begin the study on Yosh's protocol in its general form over a unitary ring and establish minimal requirements for security. In order to use the protocol over a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$, we use results from algebraic geometry to show explicit estimates on the number of $q$-rational points of an $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-definable hypersurface. To use the protocol over the integers, we introduce a broad class of integral Diophantine equations, which can be constructed from a given solution. We end with an example of the protocol over the integers and show that the public key has to be chosen very large for the protocol to be secure.

## Kurzfassung

Harry Yosh führte 2011 ein neues kryptographisches Schlüsselaustauschprotokoll [42] ein, welches auf Diophantischen Gleichungen aufbaut. Im Gegensatz zu anderen bekannten Protokollen, welche auf Diophantischen Gleichungen basieren, gab Yosh wenig Einschränkungen für die Parameter, die im Ablauf seines Protokolls benötigt werden. Das Ziel dieser Arbeit ist sowohl Yosh's Protokoll zu analysieren, als auch die Menge von privaten und öffentlichen Schlüsseln so weit zu reduzieren, um Sicherheit und eine effektive Implementation des Schlüsselaustauschs zu ermöglichen. Nach der Präsentation einer modernen Version des Beweises von Hilbert's zehntem Problem, welches die Schwierigkeit des Lösens von Diophantischen Gleichungen darstellt, wird ein Überblick über bereits exisitierende kryptographische Protokolle basierend auf Diophantischen Gleichungen gegeben. Danach beginnen wir die Analyse der allgemeinen Version von Yosh's Protokoll über einem unitären Ring, und führen minimale Anforderungen zur Sicherheit ein. Um das Protokoll über einem endlichen Körper $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ durchzuführen, beweisen wir explizite Abschätzungen über die Anzahl von $q$-rationalen Punkten einer $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-definierbaren Hyperfläche. Dafür benötigen wir Resultate der Algebraischen Geometrie. Um das Protokoll über den ganzen Zahlen durchzuführen, führen wir eine Klasse von ganzzahligen Diophantischen Gleichungen ein, welche aus einer vordefinierten Lösung konstruiert werden können. Abschließend geben wir ein Beispiel des Protokolls über den ganzen Zahlen und zeigen, dass der öffentliche Schlüssel sehr groß gewählt werden muss, um die Sicherheit des Protokolls zu gewähren.

## Contents

Abstract ..... iv
Kurzfassung ..... v
1 Introduction ..... 1
1.1 Notions and Notations ..... 2
2 Hilbert's Tenth Problem ..... 3
2.1 Principal Definitions ..... 3
2.1.1 Diophantine Sets ..... 3
2.1.2 Recursively Enumerable Sets ..... 5
2.2 Recursively Enumerable Sets are D-Sets ..... 7
2.3 Pell's equation ..... 12
2.3.1 Fundamental Units ..... 12
2.3.2 The Functions $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$ ..... 14
2.4 Exponentiation, Binomial Coefficient and Factorial are Diophantine ..... 19
2.5 D-Sets are Diophantine ..... 21
2.6 Hilbert's Tenth Problem is Unsolvable ..... 23
3 Number of Solutions of Equations over Finite Fields ..... 25
3.1 Varieties over Finite Fields ..... 25
3.1.1 Definitions and Notation ..... 25
3.1.2 Basic Inequalities ..... 28
3.1.3 The Projective Space ..... 30
3.1.4 The Non-singular Model of a Curve ..... 31
3.2 The Weil Bound for Plane Affine Curves ..... 33
3.2.1 The Genus of a Curve ..... 33
3.2.2 The Weil Bound ..... 34
3.3 Absolutely Irreducible Surfaces ..... 35
3.3.1 Affine Linear Varieties ..... 35
3.3.2 Estimates on the Restriction to Planes ..... 37
3.3.3 Improved Estimate with a Condition on the Field ..... 42
3.4 A Family of Collision-Free Functions ..... 44
4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations ..... 48
4.1 Ong-Schnorr-Shamir Signature Scheme ..... 49
4.1.1 The Protocol ..... 49
4.1.2 Cryptoanalysis of the Scheme ..... 50
4.1.3 Extensions of OSS ..... 51
4.2 Lin-Chang-Lee Cryptosystem ..... 51
4.2.1 The Protocol ..... 51
4.2.2 Cryptoanalysis ..... 52
4.3 Pre-conditions For Designing Asymmetric Cryptosystem Based On Dio- phantine Equation Hard Problem ..... 53
4.3.1 The Protocol ..... 53
4.3.2 Cryptoanalysis ..... 54
4.4 Multivariate Public Key Cryptosystems from Diophantine Equations ..... 54
4.4.1 General Framework ..... 54
4.4.2 An Instance Based on Diophantine Equations ..... 55
4.4.3 Cryptoanalysis ..... 56
5 The Key Exchange Protocol by Harry Yosh ..... 57
5.1 The Protocol ..... 57
5.2 Security Essentials ..... 59
5.2.1 Importance of Choosing a Representant $h$ ..... 63
5.3 The Protocol over Finite Fields ..... 65
5.3.1 Choosing a Polynomial $f$ ..... 66
5.3.2 Finite Fields with Characteristic Greater than 2 ..... 68
5.3.3 Choosing a, $\mathbf{b}$ and $h$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ ..... 69
5.4 The Protocol over $\mathbb{Z}$ ..... 70
5.4.1 Security over $\mathbb{Z}$ ..... 70
5.4.2 Choosing a Diagonal Polynomial ..... 74
5.4.3 The Diagonal Polynomial is Irreducible ..... 77
5.4.4 Choosing a Non-diagonal Diophantine Equation ..... 79
5.4.5 Choosing $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ and $h$ over $\mathbb{Z}$ ..... 80
5.4.6 An Example over $\mathbb{Z}$ ..... 81
6 Conclusions ..... 84
Bibliography ..... 85

## 1 Introduction

In 1994, Peter Shor developed a quantum algorithm, called Shor's algorithm [39], solving both factorization as well as the discrete logarithm problem with the use of quantum computers. Since then, the continual progress in the area of quantum computing poses a threat to the security of widely used cryptographic techniques such as the RSA cryptosystem or the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method.

Public key cryptosystems are usually built on mathematical problems which are believed to be hard to solve. This way there are operations within these cryptosystems which can be computed very efficiently with publicly available knowledge, whereas other operations are feasible only for participants holding secret information. With the exception of certain families of Diophantine equations, higher order Diophantine equations are believed to be hard to solve. In addition to that, the following problem is even undecidable: Given any Diophantine equation, is there a universal algorithm deciding whether this equation is solvable. This is known as Hilbert's tenth problem, and it was proved by Matijasevič in 1970, that no such algorithm exists [9].

Public Key cryptosystems that are based on Diophantine equations may offer an alternative to those which are based on factorization or the discrete logarithm problem. As we will see, there are already many such cryptosystems. In 2011, Harry Yosh proposed the use of multidimensional Diophantine equations over the integers for the agreement on a key, see [42]. A key agreement protocol is a cryptographic protocol, where two or more participants establish a fresh key, and each of the participants influences the outcome. As with any other security protocol, no third party should be able to recreate the established key based on the exchanged messages.

In the following, an analysis of the key agreement protocol by Harry Yosh will be given. The security of the protocol is not only based on the Diophantine equation it uses, but also on the size of families of parameters used by its participants. As a small change in the underlying parameters may cause a huge increase in the data that needs to be transmitted or an increase in the number of computations, the efficiency of the protocol is analyzed as well.

In the first chapter, a modern proof of the negative solution to Hilbert's tenth problem is given. The impossibility of constructing an algorithm that decides the solvability of any general Diophantine equation does not mean that there is no efficient way of finding all solutions for a given family of Diophantine equations. However, the key agreement protocol presented in the following works with any non-linear Diophantine equation in at least 3 unknowns, in contrast to other cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine equations, which only use a very special family of equations.

In [18], Noriko Hirata-Kohno and Attila Pethő extend the brief observations made by Yosh concerning the security of the protocol as well as the usage of finite fields. Their
results will serve as a foundation for this thesis. Amongst other things they proposed the use of a certain family of Diophantine equations over the finite fields. In Chapter 3, we establish that these equations are hard to solve by proving different estimates on the number of solutions of absolutely irreducible affine varieties over finite fields.

### 1.1 Notions and Notations

Let $K$ be a field and let

$$
f=\sum_{i \in I} a_{i} X_{1}^{\lambda_{i, 1}} \cdots X_{n}^{\lambda_{i, n}} \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]
$$

be a multivariate polynomial for a finite index set $I$. We say that $f$ is absolutely irreducible if it is irreducible on the algebraic closure $\bar{K}$. We will denote by $\operatorname{deg} f$ the total degree of $f$, i.e.

$$
\operatorname{deg} f=\max \left\{\lambda_{i, 1}+\cdots+\lambda_{i, n} \mid i \in I\right\} .
$$

Moreover, if we write $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{j}} f$ for some $j \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, we mean the degree of $f$ as a polynomial over $K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{j-1}, X_{j+1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$.
We say that $f$ is homogeneous, if

$$
\lambda_{i, 1}+\cdots+\lambda_{i, n}=\lambda_{j, 1}+\cdots+\lambda_{j, n} \text { for all } i, j \in I
$$

Otherwise we will say that $f$ is inhomogeneous.
A Diophantine equation is an equation of the form

$$
f=0,
$$

where $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ for $n \geq 2$. We say that a Diophantine equation is linear, if $\operatorname{deg} f=1$. Linear Diophantine equations are easy to solve, as shown in section 5.4.2. If $f=0$ is a Diophantine equations with $\operatorname{deg} f>1$, we call it a higher order Diophantine equation.
A finite field with $q$ elements is always denoted by $\mathbb{F}_{q}$, where $q$ is some prime power.

## 2 Hilbert's Tenth Problem

In 1900 David Hilbert published a list of 23 unsolved mathematical problems. The tenth problem on his list was the following:

Given a Diophantine equation with any number of unknown quantities and with rational integral numerical coefficients: To devise a process according to which it can be determined in a finite number of operations whether the equation is solvable in rational integers.

It was proved by Yuri Matiyasevich in 1970 [9] that there is no algorithm which takes any polynomial $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ and decides whether the Diophantine equation $f=0$ has solutions or not in finitely many steps. In the following, we will present a proof given by Yuri Manin [25] of the negative answer to Hilbert's Tenth problem which is based on so called D-sets.
First the notion of Diophantine sets is introduced. With the use of D-sets, we can show that the class of Diophantine sets equals the class of recursively enumerable sets, which will lead to the desired result.

### 2.1 Principal Definitions

### 2.1.1 Diophantine Sets

Definition. A set $\mathcal{M} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}, n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$, is called a Diophantine set, if there is some polynomial $D \in \mathbb{Z}\left[Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right]$ such that

$$
\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \in \mathcal{M} \Leftrightarrow\left(\exists x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right)\left(D\left(a_{1}, \ldots a_{n}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)=0\right]
$$

holds.

For a Diophantine set $\mathcal{M}$ as given in the definition above, we will call

$$
D\left(a_{1}, \ldots a_{n}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)=0
$$

its Diophantine representation.
Relations of the form $D\left(a_{1}, \ldots a_{n}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)=0$ describe in fact families of Diophantine equations. The variables $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$ are parameters and the $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ are unknowns. Fixing a certain tuple of parameters results in a single Diophantine equation.
In order to examine if certain sets are Diophantine or not, we first have to see what happens to Diophantine under basic set operations.

Proposition 2.1.1. Let $\mathcal{M}_{1}, \mathcal{M}_{2} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$ be Diophantine sets with Diophantine representations $D_{1}$ respectively $D_{2}$. Then $\mathcal{M}_{1} \cup \mathcal{M}_{2}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{1} \cap \mathcal{M}_{2}$ are also Diophantine.

Proof. Let $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$. The integers are an integral domain, so

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\exists x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{l} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right) \\
& {\left[\left(D_{1}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)=0\right) \vee\left(D_{2}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{l}\right)=0\right)\right]} \\
& \Leftrightarrow \\
& \left(\exists x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{l} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right)\left[D_{1}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) D_{2}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{l}\right)=0\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

This means that the union is Diophantine with the representation $D_{1} D_{2}$. Similarly the intersection of $\mathcal{M}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{2}$ is Diophantine, defined by the representation

$$
\left(D_{1}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)\right)^{2}+\left(D_{2}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{l}\right)\right)^{2}=0
$$

Proposition 2.1.2. Let $\mathcal{M}_{1} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}, \mathcal{M}_{2} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{m}$ be Diophantine sets with Diophantine representations $D_{1}$ respectively $D_{2}$. Then $\mathcal{M}_{1} \times \mathcal{M}_{2}$ and the projection of $\mathcal{M}_{1}$ to its first $k$ coordinates, $k \leq n$ are Diophantine.

Proof. For the direct product, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right) \in \mathcal{M}_{1} \times \mathcal{M} 2 \\
& \Leftrightarrow\left(\exists u_{1}, \ldots, u_{r}, v_{1}, \ldots, v_{s}\right)\left[\left(D_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{r}\right)\right)^{2}+\left(D_{2}\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}, v_{1}, \ldots, v_{s}\right)\right)^{2}=0\right],
\end{aligned}
$$

thus the direct product is Diophantine. Next assume that $\mathcal{M}_{1}^{\prime}$ is the projection of $\mathcal{M}_{1}$ to its first $k$ coordinates for some fixed $k \leq n$. Then for all $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{k}$ we have
$\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right) \in \mathcal{M}_{1}^{\prime} \Leftrightarrow\left(\exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{r}, x_{k+1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)\left[D\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}, x_{k+1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots y_{r}\right)=0\right]$,
thus the projection is Diophantine as well.
A relation on $k$ non-negative integers is a subset of $\mathbb{N}_{0}^{k}$. If a relation is a Diophantine set, we call it a Diophantine relation. Similarly, we call a function Diophantine, if its graph is a Diophantine set. The terms of Diophantine sets and Diophantine relations are usually interchangeable. For example, take the relation $\leq$ over the non-negative integers. The set $S$ of pairs $(a, b)$ with $a \leq b$ can be seen as a Diophantine set since

$$
(a, b) \in S \Leftrightarrow\left(\exists x_{1} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right)[D(a, b, x)=0],
$$

for $D=Y_{1}-Y_{2}+X_{1} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[Y_{1}, Y_{2}, X_{1}\right]$. This also equals the relation $\leq$, so we can either say that the set $S$ is Diophantine or the relation $\leq$ is, meaning the same thing. We can generalize this and say that a property $P$, i.e. a logical expression $P$, is Diophantine, if the set of all numbers having this property is Diophantine. For example, for the set of even numbers $E \subset \mathbb{N}_{0}$ we have

$$
a \in E \Leftrightarrow\left(\exists x \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right)[D(a, x)=0]
$$

for the polynomial $D=2 X-Y \in \mathbb{Z}[Y, X]$, so the property 'is an even number' is Diophantine. When it is clear which polynomial $D$ is used, we can simplify the notation and write

$$
\operatorname{Even}(s) \Leftrightarrow \exists x[2 x=a] .
$$

The domain of $x$ as given above will always be $\mathbb{N}_{0}$, so we will only use this simplified notation. This definition of an even number shows that the property 'is an even number' is Diophantine. Disjunction and conjunction of properties correspond to union and intersection of sets, so according to Proposition 2.1.1 the disjunction and conjunction of two Diophantine properties is again Diophantine. The following examples of Diophantine relations use this fact and will come into effect later on:

$$
\begin{align*}
a<b & \Leftrightarrow \exists x[a+x+1=b], \\
a \mid b & \Leftrightarrow \exists x[a x=b], \tag{2.1}
\end{align*}
$$

Let rem $(b, c)$ denote the remainder of $b$ divided by $c$. Then from the above relations, we get that

$$
\begin{equation*}
a=\operatorname{rem}(b, c) \Leftrightarrow(a<c) \wedge(c \mid(b-a)) \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

is Diophantine, which will be used in the next section, and also shows that

$$
a \equiv b \bmod c \Leftrightarrow \operatorname{rem}(a, c)=\operatorname{rem}(b, c)
$$

is Diophantine.
Note that we have constructed equation (2.2) with the use of Proposition 2.1.1. For Diophantine Relations $\mathcal{R}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{R}_{2}, \mathcal{R}_{1} \wedge \mathcal{R}_{2}$ is also Diophantine, since this corresponds to the intersection of the sets. We will use this fact heavily to construct Diophantine sets and relations in the following sections.

### 2.1.2 Recursively Enumerable Sets

So far we have not introduced a way of knowing what the term 'algorithmically computable' means yet. For this matter, we will make use of the well known Church-TuringThesis, which states that algorithmic computability is equivalent to computability by a Turing machine.

Definition. A Turing machine $M$ is a 7 -tuple $M=\left(Q, \Gamma, \square, \Sigma, F, q_{\text {start }}, \delta\right)$ where

- $Q$ is a finite set of states, and $q_{\text {start }} \in Q$ is the initial state. Further $F \subset Q$ is the set of final states.
- $\Gamma$ is the finite set of tape symbols, with $\square \in \Gamma$ the blank symbol
- $\Sigma \subset \Gamma \backslash\{\square\}$ is the set of input symbol
- $\delta:(Q \backslash F) \times \Gamma \rightarrow Q \times \Gamma \times\{\mathrm{L}, \mathrm{S}, \mathrm{R}\}$ is the transition function

Assume that $x \in(\Sigma \backslash\{\square\})^{*}$. Then a Turing machine $M$ can take this as an input, and if $M$ halts on this input, one can derive $M(x) \in F$. For details we refer to [1]. This leads to the fact that a Turing machine can distinguish between two different cases for the term 'computable'.

Definition. Let $L \subset(\Sigma \backslash\{\square\})^{*}$ be a language and let $M$ be a Turing machine. Suppose that for the set $F$ of final states we have $\{0,1\} \subseteq F$. Then

- $M$ decides $L$, if for $x \in L$ we have $M(x)=1$ and for $x \notin L$ we have $M(x)=0$. We call $L$ recursive, if there exists a Turing machine that decides $L$.
- $M$ accepts $L$, if for $x \in L$ we have $M(x) \in F$ and for $x \notin L M$ will never halt. We call $L$ recursively enumerable, if there exists a Turing machine that accepts $L$.

It follows directly from this definition that every recursive set is recursively enumerable. Indeed, assume that a Turing machine $M$ decides $L$. Then, we can construct a Turing machine $M^{\prime}$ which accepts $L$ by copying $M$, and for every state in which $M$ goes to the final state $0, M^{\prime}$ instead enters a state where it goes to the right without ever halting. It is not true that every recursively enumerable set is recursive, as the Halting problem, among many others, gives a set which can be accepted by a Turing machine, but never decided. We therefore have the following theorem, which is crucial to the answer of Hilbert's tenth problem.

Theorem 2.1.3. Let $\mathcal{R}$ be the class of all recursive languages, and $\mathcal{R}_{\mathcal{E}}$ the class of all recursively enumerable languages. Then $\mathcal{R} \subsetneq \mathcal{R}_{\mathcal{E}}$.

The introduction of primitive recursive functions allows us to further characterize recursively enumerable subsets of non-negative integers.

Definition. Let

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\text { suc }: \mathbb{N}_{0} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}, x \mapsto x+1, \\
1^{(n)}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0},\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \mapsto 1, \\
\operatorname{pr}_{i}^{n}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0},\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \mapsto x_{i},
\end{array}
$$

denote the basic functions for $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. The primitive recursive functions are constructed from the basic functions by applying composition, juxtaposition and recursion.

The composition of two functions is defined in the usual way. For juxtaposition and recursion let $f_{1}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{k_{1}} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}, f_{2}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{k_{2}} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{m}$. For $k_{1}=k_{2}$, the juxtaposition of the functions $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
g: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{k_{1}} & \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+m} \\
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}\right) & \mapsto\left(f_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}\right), f_{2}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}\right)\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

and for $k_{2}=k_{1}+2, n=m=1$ the recursion obtained from $f_{1}$ and $f_{2}$ is a function $g$ given by the equation

$$
g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}, k\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{lr}
f_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}\right) & : k=0 \\
f_{2}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}, g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k_{1}}, k-1\right), k\right) & : k>1 .
\end{array}\right.
$$

We want to be able to compare recursively enumerable sets with Diophantine sets. In order to do so, we first note that the basic functions from the definition above are

Diophantine:

$$
\begin{aligned}
y=\operatorname{suc}(x) & \Leftrightarrow y-x-1=0 \\
y=1^{(n)}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & \Leftrightarrow y-1=0 \\
y=\operatorname{pr}_{i}^{n}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & \Leftrightarrow y-x_{i}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

In addition to that, is is easy to show that any polynomial function is a primitive recursive function. Moreover, the primitive recursive functions can describe the recursively enumerable sets, as seen in the following theorem. For a proof of this theorem see [40].

Theorem 2.1.4. A set $R \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$ is recursively enumerable if and only if there is a primitive recursive function $f$ such that

$$
R=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m} \in \mathbb{N}_{0} \text { such that } f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)=0\right\} .
$$

This theorem allows us to do two things. First, as we did with Diophantine sets, we can identify recursively enumerable sets with primitive recursive functions. Second, any Diophantine set is recursively enumerable. This follows from the fact that every polynomial is a primitive recursive function and the definition of Diophantine sets. In order to proof Hilbert's tenth problem, we want to establish that the class of Diophantine sets equals the class of recursively enumerable sets. To do so, a third class of sets is introduced, the so called $D$-sets.

Definition. Let $E \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$. The set $G \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$ obtained by bounded universal quantification on the $i$-th coordinate, if

$$
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in E \Leftrightarrow \forall k \in\left\{1, \ldots, x_{i}\right\}\left[\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i-1}, k, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in G\right] .
$$

As in [25], $D$-sets are defined as follows:
Definition. Let $\mathfrak{D}$ be the class of Diophantine sets. Let $\mathfrak{C}$ be the smallest class containing $\mathfrak{D}$ which is closed under taking finite unions, finite intersections, finite direct products, projections, and applying the bounded universal quantifier. $A$ set $C \in \mathfrak{C}$ is called a D-set.

In the next section, we will establish that the D-Sets equal the recursively enumerable sets. Then, we will show that all recursively enumerable sets are Diophantine.

### 2.2 Recursively Enumerable Sets are D-Sets

Lemma 2.2.1. The class of all recursively enumerable sets is closed with respect to direct product, union, intersection and projection.

Proof. Let $R_{1}, R_{2}, R_{3}$ be recursively enumerable sets with primitive recursive functions

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{1}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+a} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}, \\
& f_{2}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+b} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}, \\
& f_{3}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{m+c} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0},
\end{aligned}
$$

for $n, m, a, b, c \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{1}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a} \in \mathbb{N}_{0} \text { with } f_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}\right)=0\right\}, \\
& R_{2}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{b} \in \mathbb{N}_{0} \text { with } f_{2}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{b}\right)=0\right\}, \\
& R_{3}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{m} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{c} \in \mathbb{N}_{0} \text { with } f_{3}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{c}\right)=0\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Closure under projection follows from the definition. For the other operations, like in Proposition 2.1.1, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{1} \cup R_{2}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}, y_{1}^{\prime} \ldots, y_{b}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right. \\
&\left.\quad \text { with } f_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}\right) f_{2}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, y_{b}^{\prime}\right)=0\right\}, \\
& R_{1} \cap R_{2}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}, y_{1}^{\prime} \ldots, y_{b}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right. \\
&\left.\quad \text { with }\left(f_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}\right)\right)^{2}+\left(f_{2}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, y_{b}^{\prime}\right)\right)^{2}=0\right\}, \\
& R_{1} \times R_{2}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{m}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+m} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}, y_{1}^{\prime} \ldots, y_{c}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right. \\
&\left.\quad \text { with }\left(f_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{a}\right)\right)^{2}+\left(f_{3}\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}, y_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, y_{c}^{\prime}\right)\right)^{2}=0\right\},
\end{aligned}
$$

and since the product and the sum of primitive recursive functions is again primitive recursive, the sets $R_{1} \cup R_{2}, R_{1} \cap R_{2}$ and $R_{1} \times R_{2}$ are recursively enumerable.

We need to introduce the so called Gödel function, which is defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{gd}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{3} & \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}, \\
(u, k, t) & \mapsto \operatorname{rem}(1+k t, u) .
\end{aligned}
$$

With the use of this function, we may encode arbitrarily long sequences $\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{N}\right)$ with the pair $(u, t)$.

Indeed, choose some $X \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ large enough such that $X \geq N$ and for all $k \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$ we have $1+k N!>y_{k}$ and set $t=X!$. Consider the system of equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& u \equiv y_{1} \\
& \bmod 1+t \\
& u \equiv y_{2} \bmod 1+2 t \\
& \ldots \\
& u \equiv y_{N} \bmod 1+N t .
\end{aligned}
$$

For all $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$, we have $\operatorname{gcd}(1+i t, 1+j t)=\operatorname{gcd}(1+i X!, 1+j X!)=1$, since any prime $p$ dividing the greatest common divisor would also divide $(i-j) X$ !, meaning that $p<X$, but no such $p$ could divide $1+i X$ !. Therefore, according to the Chinese Remainder Theorem, there is a unique solution $u \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ to this system of equations with $u<\prod_{i=1}^{N}(1+i t)$. Thus ( $\left.u, t\right)$ encodes the $N$-tuple $\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{N}\right)$.
By (2.2), the remainder function and thus also the Gödel function are Diophantine. Moreover, it can be shown that this function is primitive recursive.

Lemma 2.2.2. The class of all recursively enumerable sets is closed with respect to the bounded universal quantifier.

Proof. Let $E$ be a recursively enumerable set with primitive function $f$ with domain $\mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+m}$. Let $G \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$ be obtained from $E$ by the use of the bounded universal quantifier. We define a function $g$ by
$g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{x_{n}}\left(f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n-1}, k, \operatorname{gd}\left(u_{1}, k, t_{1}\right), \ldots, \operatorname{gd}\left(u_{m}, k, t_{m}\right)\right)\right)^{2}$.
Since $f$ and gd are primitive recursive, so is $g$. We will show that

$$
\begin{aligned}
G=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid\right. & \exists u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m} \\
& \text { with } \left.g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m}\right)=0\right\},
\end{aligned}
$$

meaning that $G$ is recursively enumerable.
First, assume that for a tuple $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$, there are some $u_{j}, t_{j}$ such that

$$
g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m}\right)=0 .
$$

This means that for all $k \in\left\{1, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$

$$
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n-1}, k, \operatorname{gd}\left(u_{1}, k, t_{1}\right), \ldots, \operatorname{gd}\left(u_{m}, k, t_{m}\right)\right)=0
$$

and hence $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in G$ by the definition of the bounded universal quantifier.
So now assume that $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in G$. Then, for all $k \in\left\{1, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ there are some $y_{i, k}$, $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$, such that

$$
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n-1}, k, y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}\right)=0
$$

By the definition of gd , there are pairs $\left(u_{i}, t_{i}\right)$ with $\operatorname{gd}\left(u_{i}, k, t_{i}\right)=y_{i, k}$ for all $i, k$. Therefore there exist $u_{i}, t_{i}$ such that

$$
g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}, t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m}\right)=0
$$

which completes the proof.
Lemma 2.2.3. Every $D$-set is recursively enumerable.
Proof. Every Diophantine set it recursively enumerable. The class of $D$-sets is obtained by closing the Diophantine sets under direct product, union, intersection, projection and the bounded universal quantifier. Thus, by Lemma 2.2.1 and Lemma 2.2.2, every $D$-set is recursively enumerable.

To prove the other direction, we use the characterization of recursively enumerable sets as given in Theorem 2.1.4.

Lemma 2.2.4. Let $f: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{d_{f}} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{i_{f}}, g: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{d_{g}} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{i_{g}}$ be primitive recursive functions whose graphs $\Gamma_{f}, \Gamma_{g}$ are D-sets.

1. Let $d_{f}=q, i_{f}=r, d_{g}=p, i_{g}=q$. Further let $h_{1}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{r}$ be the primitive recursive function, which is the composition of $f$ and $g$. Then $\Gamma_{h_{1}}$, the graph of $h_{1}$, is a D-set.
2. Let $d_{f}=p, i_{f}=q, d_{g}=p, i_{g}=r$. Further let $h_{2}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{r+q}$ be the primitive recursive function, which is the juxtaposition of $f$ and $g$. Then $\Gamma_{h_{2}}$, the graph of $h_{2}$, is a D-set.

Proof. 1. By definition, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Gamma_{h_{1}}= & \left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{p}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{r}\right) \mid h_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{p}\right)=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{r}\right)\right\} \\
= & \left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{p}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{r}\right) \mid \exists z_{1}, \ldots, z_{z} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right. \text { with } \\
& \left.\quad\left[g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{p}\right)=\left(z_{1}, \ldots, z_{q}\right) \text { and } f\left(z_{1}, \ldots, z_{q}\right)=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{r}\right)\right]\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $\Gamma_{h_{1}}$ is the projection of $\left(\Gamma_{g} \cap \mathbb{N}_{0}^{r}\right) \times\left(\mathbb{N}_{0}^{p} \cap \Gamma_{f}\right)$ to the first $r$ and last $q$ coordinates. Since $D$-sets are closed under finite direct products, intersections and projections, $\Gamma_{h_{1}}$ is also a $D$-set.
2. For juxtaposition, we first define a function

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{perm}_{p, q, r}: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{p+q+r} & \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}^{p+q+r} \\
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{p}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{q}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{r}\right) & \mapsto\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{p}, z_{1}, \ldots, z_{r}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{q}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

It is easy to see that the image of a Diophantine set under perm ${ }_{p, q, r}$ is again Diophantine. By the definition of juxtaposition, the graph is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Gamma_{h_{2}} & \left.=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{q}, z_{1}, \ldots z_{r}\right)\right) \mid h_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right)=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{q}, z_{1}, \ldots z_{r}\right)\right\} \\
= & \left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{q}, z_{1}, \ldots z_{r}\right)\right) \mid \\
& \left.f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right)=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{q}\right) \text { and } g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right)=\left(z_{1}, \ldots z_{r}\right)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $\Gamma_{h_{2}}=\left(\Gamma_{f} \times \mathbb{N}_{0}^{r}\right) \cap \operatorname{perm}_{p, q, r}\left(\Gamma_{g} \times \mathbb{N}_{0}^{q}\right)$. Again since $D$-sets are closed under intersection and direct product, $\Gamma_{h_{2}}$ is a $D$-set.

Lemma 2.2.5. Let $f: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}, g: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+2} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0}$ be primitive recursive functions whose graphs $\Gamma_{f}, \Gamma_{g}$ are D-sets. Then the graph $\Gamma_{h}$, where $h$ is the function defined recursively from $f$ and $g$, is a $D$-set.

Proof. First we write the graph $\Gamma_{h}$ as a union $\Gamma_{h}=\Gamma_{1} \cup \Gamma_{2}$, where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, y\right) \in \Gamma_{h} \text { with } x_{n+1}=0 \Leftrightarrow\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, y\right) \in \Gamma_{1} \\
& \left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, y\right) \in \Gamma_{h} \text { with } x_{n+1} \geq 1 \Leftrightarrow\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, y\right) \in \Gamma_{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the definition of the recursion of two functions, we have $x_{n+1}=0$ for $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, y\right) \in$ $\Gamma_{1}$ iff $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=y$, and this holds iff $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y\right) \in \Gamma_{f}$. Hence

$$
\Gamma_{1}=\operatorname{perm}_{n, 1,1}\left(\Gamma_{f} \times \mathbb{N}_{0}\right) \cap \operatorname{perm}_{n, 1,1}\left(\mathbb{N}_{0}^{n-1} \times\{0\}\right)
$$

therefore $\Gamma_{1}$ is a $D$-set. So it remains to prove that $\Gamma_{2}$ is also one. In order to do so, we introduce a set $E$, which is the projection of $E^{\prime} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+4}$ to its first $n+2$ coordinates, where the $E^{\prime}$ is defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, z, u, t\right) \in & E^{\prime} \\
& \Leftrightarrow z=\operatorname{gd}(u, y, t) \\
& \text { and } \operatorname{gd}(u, 0, t)=f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \\
& \text { and } y \geq 1 \text {, for } k \in\{2, \ldots, y\} \\
& \operatorname{gd}(u, k, t)=g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k-1, \operatorname{gd}(u, k-1, t)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

We denote the first equation of the equivalence above $E_{1}$, the second $E_{2}$ and the third $E_{3}$. We claim that $\Gamma_{2} \subseteq E$. Let $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, z\right) \in \Gamma_{2}$. Further let $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{y}\right)$ be the sequence defined by $a_{i}=h\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, i\right)$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, y\}$. By the definition of the function gd, we can find $u$, $t$ such that $\operatorname{gd}(u, k, t)=a_{k}$. Since $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, z\right) \in \Gamma_{2}$, we have $h\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y\right)=z$ and thus equation $E_{1}$ is true. Also $E_{2}$ is satisfied, since

$$
\operatorname{gd}(u, 0, t)=h\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, 0\right)=f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) .
$$

It is easy to show that $E_{3}$ holds by using induction on $k$, so indeed $\Gamma_{2} \subseteq E$.
Next we claim that $E \subseteq \Gamma_{2}$. To show this, let $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, z, u, t\right) \in E$. Then $E_{1}, E_{2}, E_{3}$ define the recursion of $f$ and $g$ which is $h$, and since by $E_{3}$ we have $y \geq 1,\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, z\right) \in$ $\Gamma_{2}$ and thus $\Gamma_{2} \subseteq E$.
Since $\Gamma_{2}=E$, it suffices to show that sets which are determined by $E_{1}, E_{2}, E_{3}$ are $D$ sets, proving that $\Gamma_{2}$ is a $D$-set. $E_{1}$ is Diophantine and thus the corresponding set is a $D$-set. The set determined by $E_{2}$ is the projection to the first $n+4$ coordinates of the intersection of the $D$-sets given by the relations

$$
k-1=0, w=\operatorname{gd}(u, k, t) \text { and } f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)-w=0,
$$

thus $E_{2}$ describes a $D$-set. So let us consider the set that arises from equation $E_{3}$. Let $F$ be the set

$$
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, x_{n+1}, u, t\right) \in F \Leftrightarrow \operatorname{gd}\left(u, x_{n+1}+1, t\right)=g\left(x_{1} \ldots, x_{n+1}, \operatorname{gd}\left(u, x_{n+1}, t\right)\right) .
$$

This is a $D$-set, as it is the projection to the first $n+3$ of the intersection of the sets

$$
\begin{aligned}
& w_{1}=\operatorname{gd}\left(u, x_{n+1}+1, t\right), \\
& w_{2}=\operatorname{gd}\left(u, x_{n+1}, t\right), \\
& w_{3}=g\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, w_{2}\right)=w_{1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}, u, t\right) \in E_{3} \Leftrightarrow \forall k \in\left\{1, \ldots, x_{n+1}-1\right\}:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, u, t\right) \in F
$$

and thus $E_{3}$ is a $D$-set.
Theorem 2.2.6. The class of all $D$-sets equals the class of all recursively enumerable sets.
Proof. From Lemma 2.2.3, every $D$-set is recursively enumerable, so we have to show that the converse is also true. Let $E$ be a recursively enumerable set. By Theorem 2.1.4, the set $E$ is the projection of

$$
\left(\mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \times\{0\}\right) \cap\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+1} \mid f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=y\right\}
$$

to its first $n$ coordinates, for some primitive recursive function $f$. So it suffices to show that every graph of a recursive function is a $D$-set. Every recursive function arises from the basic functions by applying composition, juxtaposition and recursion. So by Lemma 2.2.4 and Lemma 2.2.5, and the fact that the basic recursive functions describe $D$-sets, the graph of every recursive function is indeed a $D$-set.

Since we have shown that D-sets are the same as recursively enumerable sets, we want to deduce the equality of the class of D-sets and Diophantine sets. For this, we will need to show that exponentiation as well as the factorial relation are both Diophantine.

### 2.3 Pell's equation

We will first establish that the exponential relation, i.e. the set of all triples $(k, m, n)$ with $m=k^{n}$ is Diophantine. To do so, we will work with a certain kind of Pell's equation. Pell's equation is a Diophantine equation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{2}-d y^{2}=1 . \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation is trivial when $d$ is a square, so this case is omitted.
Solutions to (2.3) are connected with properties of the ring $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{d}]$. In order to work with it, we will give the following definition.

Definition. Let $L / K$ be a finite field extension, and let $\mu_{a}$ be the $K$-linear map

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mu_{a}: L & \rightarrow L, \\
x & \mapsto a x
\end{aligned}
$$

for some $a \in L$. We define the norm of a as $N_{L / K}(a):=\operatorname{det} \mu_{a}$.
We will only need the norm function for an algebraic number field $K / Q$, which we will simply denote as $N$. An algebraic number field is a finite Galois extension, so we can use the well-known fact that

$$
N(x)=\prod_{\sigma \in G} \sigma x \text { for } G=\operatorname{Gal}(K / Q) .
$$

Let $\mathcal{O}_{K}$ be the ring of integers of $K$. Then for all $a \in \mathcal{O}_{K}$, we have $|N(a)|=1$ if and only if $a$ is a unit.

### 2.3.1 Fundamental Units

Let $K$ be a field and denote by $\mu(K)$ the roots of unit of $K$. For certain $d \in \mathbb{Z}$, we will show that solutions to (2.3) have a finite set of generators.

Theorem 2.3.1 (Dirichlet's Unit Theorem). Let $K$ be an algebraic number field with $[K$ : $\mathrm{Q}]=r_{1}+2 r_{2}$, where $r_{1}$ denotes the number of real and $r_{2}$ the number of pairs of conjugate complex embeddings. Let $\mathcal{O}_{K}$ be the ring of integers of $K$. Then there are some $\zeta \in \mu\left(\mathcal{O}_{K}\right)$ and $\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r_{1}+r_{2}-1} \in \mathcal{O}_{K}^{\times}$such that every $\varepsilon \in \mathcal{O}_{K}^{\times}$has a unique representation

$$
\varepsilon=\zeta^{d} \prod_{i=1}^{r_{1}+r_{2}-1} \varepsilon_{i}^{k_{i}}, \quad \text { with } d \in\{0, \ldots, \operatorname{ord}(\zeta)-1\}, k_{1}, \ldots, k_{r_{1}+r_{2}-1} \in \mathbb{Z} .
$$

This means that

$$
\mathcal{O}_{K}^{\times} \cong \mu\left(\mathcal{O}_{K}\right) \times \mathbb{Z}^{r_{1}+r_{2}-1} .
$$

We denote a tuple $\left(\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{r_{1}+r_{2}-1}\right)$ as the fundamental units of $\mathcal{O}_{K}$. We can use the Unit Theorem to prove the following:

Proposition 2.3.2. Let $d \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ be square-free with $d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4$. Then the equation

$$
x^{2}-d y^{2}=1
$$

has an infinite set of solutions $S \subset \mathbb{Z}^{2}$, and there is some solution $(\alpha, \beta) \in S$ such that there is a unique $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ with

$$
a+b \sqrt{d}= \pm(\alpha+\beta \sqrt{d})^{k}
$$

for all $(a, b) \in S$.
Proof. Denote by $K$ the quadratic number field $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$. Since $d$ is positive, $K \subset \mathbb{R}$, hence $\mu(K)=\{-1,1\}$. Moreover there are two real embeddings

$$
\sigma: a+b \sqrt{d} \mapsto a \pm b \sqrt{d}
$$

and with $[K: Q]=2$ we have no complex embeddings. Thus, by Dirichlet's Unit Theorem, $\mathcal{O}_{K}^{\times} \cong \mathbb{Z} / 2 \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$. With $d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4$ we have $\mathcal{O}_{K}=\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{d}]$. The set of units equals the set of algebraic integers $\alpha=a+b \sqrt{d} \in \mathcal{O}_{K}$ with $1=N_{K}(\alpha)=$ $(a+b \sqrt{d})(a-b \sqrt{d})=a^{2}-d b^{2}$, so the units are in a one-to-one correspondence with the set $S$.

We call a pair $(\alpha, \beta)$, as given in the proposition above, a fundamental solution. Next we consider the Pell equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right) y^{2}=1, \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some positive integer $a>1$. We claim that $(x, y)=(a, 1)$ is the fundamental solution to the above equation. To show this, we can not work with the abovementioned proposition, since for the case $a \equiv 3 \bmod 4$, we have that $d=a^{2}-1$ is not square-free. In fact, we will only show that $(a, 1)$ generates the positive integer solutions of the above equation. So consider solutions to (2.4) given by $\chi_{1}=x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{d}, \chi_{2}=x_{2}+y_{2} \sqrt{d} \in$ $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{d}]$ with $1 \leq \chi_{1}, \chi_{2}$. It is easy to see that for any $x+y \sqrt{d} \in \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{d}]$ solving (2.4) we have

- $x, y>0 \Leftrightarrow x+y \sqrt{d}>1$,
- $x>0$ and $y<0 \Leftrightarrow 0<x+y \sqrt{d}<1$,
- $x<0$ and $y>0 \Leftrightarrow-1<x+y \sqrt{d}<0$,
- $x, y<0 \Leftrightarrow x+y \sqrt{d}<-1$,
so $x_{1}, x_{2}, y_{1}, y_{2}>0$. If we have $1 \leq \chi_{1}<\chi_{2}$, it follows that $1 \leq x_{1}<x_{2}$ and $0 \leq y_{1}<y_{2}$, so the set of all $\alpha=x+y \sqrt{d}>1$ with $x^{2}-d y^{2}=(x+y \sqrt{d})(x-y \sqrt{d})=N(\alpha)=1$ is well-ordered. We claim that the smallest $\alpha$ in this set is the fundamental solution to (2.4). Indeed, on the one hand for any $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ we have $N\left(\alpha^{n}\right)=N(\alpha)^{n}=1$, so $\alpha^{n}$ is a solution. On the other hand for a solution with $1 \leq \beta$, there is some $n$ such that

$$
\alpha^{n} \leq \beta<\alpha^{n+1}
$$

so $1 \leq \alpha^{-n} \beta<\alpha$ and $N\left(\alpha^{-n} \beta\right)=1$. By the minimality of $\alpha$ we have $\alpha^{-n} \beta=1$ and thus $\beta=\alpha^{n}$. Therefore, in order to show that $(a, 1)$ is the fundamental solution, we need to prove that $a+\sqrt{d}$ is minimal among solutions to the Pell equation above which are greater than 1. Assume that $\chi=x_{3}+y_{3} \sqrt{d}$ is a solution with $1<\chi_{3}<a+\sqrt{d}$. But then $x_{3}<a$ and $y_{3}<1$, which is not possible, so $(a, 1)$ is indeed the fundamental solution.

### 2.3.2 The Functions $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$

Since $(a, 1)$ is the fundamental solution of $(2.4)$, the coefficients $(x, y)$ of any solution $(a+\sqrt{d})^{n}$ can be expressed through $(a, 1)$.
Definition. Let $a, n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $a>1$. We denote by $\left(X_{a}(n), Y_{a}(n)\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{2}$ the unique pair solving the system of equations

$$
\begin{align*}
x^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right) y^{2} & =1  \tag{2.5}\\
x+y \sqrt{a^{2}-1} & =\left(a+\sqrt{a^{2}-1}\right)^{n} \tag{2.6}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that it follows from the definition above that both $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$ are strictly increasing functions in $n$. Moreover, by the previous section, $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$ are well-defined. In fact, they form a bijective map from $\mathbb{N}_{0}$ to solution pairs over the non-negative integers of (2.4): For every $\left(x_{0}, y_{0}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{2}$ with $x_{0}^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right) y_{0}^{2}=1$ there is a unique $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $\left(x_{0}, y_{0}\right)=\left(X_{a}\left(n_{0}\right), Y_{a}\left(n_{0}\right)\right)$.
Taking conjugates in the ring $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{d}]$ is a ring homomorphism, so from (2.6) we derive the equivalent equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x-y \sqrt{a^{2}-1}=\left(a-\sqrt{a^{2}-1}\right)^{n} \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will now prove some properties of the functions $Y_{a}(n)$ and $X_{a}(n)$.
Lemma 2.3.3. Let $a>1$. Then for all $n, m \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $n \geq m$ we have the following equations:

$$
\begin{align*}
X_{a}(n \pm m) & =X_{a}(n) X_{a}(m) \pm d Y_{a}(n) Y_{a}(m)  \tag{2.8}\\
Y_{a}(n \pm m) & =Y_{a}(n) X_{a}(m) \pm X_{a}(n) Y_{a}(m)  \tag{2.9}\\
X_{a}(2 n) & =2 X_{a}(n)^{2}-1  \tag{2.10}\\
Y_{a}(2 n) & =2 X_{a}(n) Y_{a}(n) \tag{2.11}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. From (2.6), we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{a}(n+m)+Y_{a}(n+m) \sqrt{d} & =(a+\sqrt{d})^{n+m} \\
& =(a+\sqrt{d})^{n}(a+\sqrt{d})^{m} \\
& =\left(X_{a}(n)+Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{d}\right)\left(X_{a}(m)+Y_{a}(m) \sqrt{d}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Noting that $\overline{(a+\sqrt{s})}=a-\sqrt{s}=(a+\sqrt{s})^{-1}$, we use the same method to obtain

$$
X_{a}(n-m)+\sqrt{d} Y_{a}(n-m)=\left(X_{a}(n)+\sqrt{d} Y_{a}(n)\right)\left(X_{a}(m)-\sqrt{d} Y_{a}(m)\right)
$$

Every element in $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{d}]$ can uniquely be written as $\alpha=x+y \sqrt{d}$, so by separating the above equations into integers and elements in $\sqrt{d} \mathbb{Z}$, we obtain the first two equations. Equation (2.11) follows by setting $m=n$. For equation (2.10), we have

$$
X_{a}(2 n)=X_{a}(n+n)=X_{a}(n)^{2}+d Y_{a}(n)^{2}=X_{a}(n)^{2}+\left(X_{a}(n)^{2}-1\right) .
$$

By definition, we have

$$
X_{a}(n)+Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{a^{2}-1}=\left(a+\sqrt{a^{2}-1}\right)^{n}
$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. Thus, for all $a \geq 2, X_{a}(0)=1, X_{a}(1)=a$ and $Y_{a}(0)=0, Y_{a}(1)=1$. By setting $m=1$ in (2.8) and (2.9), we can represent $X$ and $Y$ as the linear recurrences

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
X_{a}(0)=1, \quad X_{a}(1)=a, \quad X_{a}(n+1)=2 a X_{a}(n)-X_{a}(n-1) \\
Y_{a}(0)=0, \quad Y_{a}(1)=1, \quad Y_{a}(n+1)=2 a Y_{a}(n)-Y_{a}(n-1) \tag{2.13}
\end{array}
$$

These recurrences even hold for $a=1$, by setting $X_{1}(n)=1$ and $Y_{1}(n)=n$. This allows us to prove the following:
Lemma 2.3.4. Let $a, b \geq 1$ and $n, k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. then

$$
\begin{align*}
& Y_{a}(n) \equiv Y_{b}(n) \bmod (a-b)  \tag{2.14}\\
& Y_{a}(n) \equiv n \bmod (a-1)  \tag{2.15}\\
& (2 a-1)^{n} \leq Y_{a}(n+1)<(2 a)^{n},  \tag{2.16}\\
& X_{a}(n)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n) \equiv k^{n} \bmod \left(2 a k-k^{2}-1\right) . \tag{2.17}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. We show the first equation by induction on $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. For $n \in\{0,1\}$ there is nothing to show, so assume that $n \geq 2$. By (2.13), $Y_{a}(n)$ is a polynomial in $a$ and $n$. Hence, also by the above recurrence,

$$
\begin{aligned}
Y_{a}(n)-Y_{b}(n) & \equiv 2(a-b)\left(Y_{a}(n-1)-Y_{b}(n-1)-\left(Y_{a}(n-2)-Y_{b}(n-2)\right)\right. \\
& \equiv 0 \bmod (a-b) .
\end{aligned}
$$

For equation (2.15), we set $b=1$. The third equation is easily proved by induction with (2.13). For the fourth equation, we again use induction on $n$ and the equations (2.12) and (2.13). For $n \in\{0,1\}$ there is nothing to show, so assume that $n \geq 2$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{a}(n+1)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n+1) & \equiv 2 a\left(X_{a}(n)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n)\right)-\left(X_{a}(n-1)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n-1)\right) \\
& \equiv 2 a k^{n}-k^{n-1} \equiv k^{n-1}(2 a k-1) \\
& \equiv k^{2} k^{n-1} \equiv k^{n+1} \bmod \left(2 a k-k^{2}-1\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The following two lemmas are crucial to prove Proposition 2.3.7:
Lemma 2.3.5. With the notations above, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
& n \mid m \text { if and only if } Y_{a}(n) \mid Y_{a}(m) \text { and }  \tag{2.18}\\
& Y_{a}^{2}(n) \mid Y_{a}(m) \text { if and only if } n Y_{a}(n) \mid m . \tag{2.19}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. By definition $Y_{a}(n)$ and $X_{a}(n)$, for any $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$, form a solution to the Pell equation $x^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right) y^{2}=1$, thus $\operatorname{gcd}\left(X_{a}(n), Y_{a}(n)\right)=1$. By (2.9)

$$
Y_{a}(n \pm m) \equiv Y_{a}(m) X_{a}(n) \quad \bmod Y_{a}(n)
$$

and thus $Y_{a}(n) \mid Y_{a}(n \pm m)$ if and only if $Y_{a}(n) \mid Y_{a}(m)$. For unique $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $0 \leq r<n$ we can write $m=q n+r$ and thus

$$
Y_{a}(n)\left|Y_{a}(m) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad Y_{a}(n)\right| Y_{a}(q n+r) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad Y_{a}(n) \mid Y_{a}(r)
$$

Hence $Y_{a}(n) \mid Y_{a}(m)$ if and only if $Y_{a}(r)=0$ and this holds if and only if $n \mid m$. For equation (2.19), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{a}(j n)+Y_{a}(j n) \sqrt{d} & =(a+\sqrt{d})^{j n}=\left(X_{a}(n)+Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{d}\right)^{j} \\
& =\sum_{i=0}^{j}\binom{j}{i}\left(X_{a}(n)\right)^{j-i}\left(Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{d}\right)^{i} \\
& =\sum_{i \text { even }}\left(X_{a}(n)\right)^{j-i}\left(Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{d}\right)^{i}+\sqrt{d} \sum_{i \text { odd }}\left(X_{a}(n)\right)^{j-i}\left(Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{d}\right)^{i-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

and hence

$$
Y_{a}(n j)=\sum_{i \text { odd }}\left(X_{a}(n)\right)^{j-i}\left(Y_{a}(n) \sqrt{d}\right)^{i-1} \equiv j X_{a}(n)^{j-1} Y_{a}(n) \quad \bmod \left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2} .
$$

Now assume that $\left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2} \mid Y_{a}(m)$. Then $Y_{a}(n) \mid Y_{a}(m)$ and by the first part of the lemma, there is some $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $n=k m$. Now

$$
k X_{a}(n)^{k-1} Y_{a}(n) \equiv Y_{a}(m) \equiv 0 \quad \bmod \left(Y_{a}(m)^{2}\right)
$$

and thus $\left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2} \mid k Y_{a}(m)$, meaning that $n Y(n) \mid m$. For the other direction, suppose that $n Y(n) \mid m$, and again let $k=Y(n)$. Then

$$
Y_{a}\left(n Y_{a}(n)\right) \equiv Y_{a}(n) X_{a}(n)^{Y_{a}(n)-1} Y_{a}(n) \equiv 0 \quad \bmod \left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2},
$$

so $\left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2} \mid Y_{a}\left(n Y_{a}(n)\right)$, and by (2.18) and the fact that $n Y_{a}(n)\left|m, Y_{a}\left(n Y_{a}(n)\right)\right| Y_{a}(m)$ and thus $\left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2} \mid Y_{a}(m)$.

Lemma 2.3.6. With the notations above, for $a \geq 2, n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& Y_{a}(n-1)+Y_{a}(n)<X_{a}(n),  \tag{2.20}\\
& Y_{a}(4 n i \pm m) \equiv \pm Y_{a}(m) \bmod X_{a}(n),  \tag{2.21}\\
& Y_{a}(4 n i+2 n \pm m) \equiv \mp Y_{a}(m) \bmod X_{a}(n),  \tag{2.22}\\
& Y_{a}(k) \equiv \pm Y_{a}(m) \bmod X_{a}(n) \text { if and only if } k \equiv \pm m \bmod 2 n, \tag{2.23}
\end{align*}
$$

where the signs $\pm$ do not correspond in equation (2.23).
Proof. By (2.9), we have

$$
2 Y_{a}(n-1) \leq a Y_{a}(n-1)<a Y_{a}(n-1)+X_{a}(n-1)=Y_{a}(n),
$$

hence $Y_{a}(n-1)<Y_{a}(n)-Y_{a}(n-1)$ and it follows that

$$
Y_{a}(n-1)+Y_{a}(n)<2 Y_{a}(n)-Y_{a}(n-1) \leq a Y_{a}(n)-Y_{a}(n-1)=X_{a}(n),
$$

so $Y_{a}(n-1)+Y_{a}(n)<X_{a}(n)$.
Next by Lemma 2.3.3,

$$
Y_{a}(2 n) \equiv 0 \text { and } X_{a}(2 n) \equiv-1 \quad \bmod X_{a}(n) .
$$

So by (2.9) and using $2 n$ instead of $n$, we derive

$$
Y_{a}(2 n \pm m) \equiv \mp Y_{a}(m) \quad \bmod X_{a}(n)
$$

and thus for all $i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
Y_{a}(4 n i \pm m) & =Y_{a}(i(2 n+2 n) \pm m)=Y_{a}(2 n+\overbrace{2 n+\cdots+2 n \pm m}) \equiv-Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime}\right)= \\
& =Y_{a}(2 n+\underbrace{:=m^{\prime \prime}}_{\underbrace{}_{2 i-1 \text { terms }} \overbrace{2 n+\cdots+2 n}^{m^{\prime}} \pm m}) \equiv Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime \prime}\right) \equiv \ldots \equiv Y_{a}(2 n+2 n \pm m) \equiv-Y_{a}(2 n \pm m) \\
& \equiv \pm Y_{a}(m) \bmod X_{a}(n) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Equation (2.22) follows along the same lines. For the last equation of the lemma, first assume that $k=2 n j \pm m$ for some $j \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. With the two equations derived above, we have

$$
Y_{a}(k)=\left\{\begin{array}{lr}
Y_{a}(4 n i \pm m) \equiv \pm Y_{a}(m) & \text { for } j=2 i \\
Y_{a}(4 n i+2 n \pm m) \equiv \mp Y_{a}(m) & \text { for } j=2 i+1
\end{array}\right.
$$

for some $i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$, so $Y_{a}(k) \equiv \pm Y_{a}(m) \bmod X_{a}(m)$.
So assume now that $Y_{a}(k) \equiv \pm Y_{a}(m) \bmod X_{a}(n)$. Let $0 \leq k^{\prime}, m^{\prime} \leq n$ be representants of $\pm k$ and $\pm m$ modulo $2 n$. Then there is some $i \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ such that $k= \pm k^{\prime}+i(2 n)$ and like we showed before

$$
Y_{a}(k)=Y_{a}\left(2 n+\cdots+2 n \pm k^{\prime}\right) \equiv \pm Y_{a}\left(k^{\prime}\right) \bmod X_{a}(n)
$$

Likewise it follows that $Y_{a}(m) \equiv \pm Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime}\right)$ and thus by assumption $Y_{a}\left(k^{\prime}\right) \equiv \pm Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime}\right)$ $\bmod X_{a}(n)$. Suppose that $k^{\prime} \neq m^{\prime}$. Then, since $Y_{a}(n)$ is strictly increasing in $n$ and by (2.20),

$$
0<\mid Y_{a}\left(k^{\prime} \pm Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime}\right)|\leq| Y_{a}\left(k^{\prime}+Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime}\right) \mid \leq Y_{a}(n-1)+Y(n)<X_{a}(n),\right.\right.
$$

contradicting $X: a(n) \mid\left(Y_{a}\left(k^{\prime}\right) \pm Y_{a}\left(m^{\prime}\right)\right)$. So $k^{\prime}=m^{\prime}$ and hence $k \equiv \pm m \bmod 2 n$.

We are now able to show that both functions $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$ are Diophantine.
Proposition 2.3.7. Let $a \geq 2$. Then $c=Y_{a}(n)$ and $d=X_{a}(n)$ are Diophantine relations.
Proof. We will prove first that for all $(c, a, n) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}, c=Y_{a}(n)$ holds if and only if there are $d, e, f, g, h, i, j \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ such that
(1) $d^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right) c^{2}=1$,
(4) $e=(j+1) 2 c^{2}$,
(7) $h \equiv c \bmod f$,
(2) $f^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right) e^{2}=1$,
(5) $g \equiv a \bmod f$,
(8) $h \equiv n \bmod 2 c$,
$i^{2}-\left(g^{2}-1\right) h^{2}=1$,
(6) $g \equiv 1 \bmod 2 c$,
(9) $n \leq c$.

This would mean that $c=Y_{a}(n)$ is the finite intersection of Diophantine relations and thus Diophantine. So first assume that for some $d, e, f, g, h, i, j \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ the equations (1) - (9) are true. Then, by definition of $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$, there are some $n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ such that

$$
d=X_{a}\left(n_{1}\right), c=Y_{a}\left(n_{1}\right), f=X_{a}\left(n_{2}\right), e=Y_{a}\left(n_{2}\right), i=X_{g}\left(n_{3}\right) \text { and } h=Y_{g}\left(n_{3}\right) .
$$

So to prove that $c=Y_{a}(n)$, it suffices to show that $n_{1}=n$. By relation (4) and (2.22), we have

$$
c^{2}\left|e \Leftrightarrow\left(Y_{a}\left(n_{1}\right)\right)^{2}\right| Y_{a}\left(n_{2}\right) \Leftrightarrow n_{1} Y_{a}\left(n_{1}\right)\left|n_{2} \Rightarrow Y_{a}\left(n_{1}\right)\right| n_{2} \Leftrightarrow c \mid n_{2} .
$$

By (2.14), $Y_{g}\left(n_{3}\right) \equiv Y_{1}\left(n_{3}\right) \bmod g-1$, and with $g-1 \equiv 0 \bmod 2 c$ it follows that $Y_{g}\left(n_{3}\right) \equiv Y_{1}\left(n_{3}\right) \bmod 2 c$, hence

$$
n \equiv h=Y_{g}\left(n_{3}\right) \equiv Y_{1}\left(n_{3}\right)=n_{3} \quad \bmod 2 c .
$$

Also with (2.14) we have $Y_{a}\left(n_{3}\right) \equiv Y_{g}\left(n_{3}\right) \bmod f$, therefore

$$
Y_{a}\left(n_{3}\right) \equiv Y_{g}\left(n_{3}\right)=h \equiv c=Y_{a}(p) \quad \bmod X_{a}\left(n_{2}\right)
$$

and thus by $(2.23) n_{3} \equiv \pm n_{1} \bmod 2 n_{2}$. With $c \mid n_{2}$ and $n \equiv n_{3} \bmod 2 c$ it follows that $n \equiv \pm n_{1} \bmod 2 c$, and since $0 \leq n_{1}, b \leq c$, it follows that $n=n_{1}$. For the equivalence to be true is is not necessary that $d=X_{a}(n)$, but this is also true by relation (1).
For the other direction, assume that $c=Y_{a}(n)$ and let $d=X_{a}(n)$. By definition (1) holds and (9) by the monotonicity of $Y_{a}$. By setting $n_{2}=n Y_{a}(n), f=X_{a}\left(2 n_{2}\right)$ and $e=Y_{a}\left(2 n_{2}\right.$, (2) holds. By (2.19),

$$
n Y_{a}(n)\left|n Y_{a}(n) \Leftrightarrow c^{2}=\left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2}\right| Y_{a}\left(n Y_{a}(n)\right)=Y_{a}\left(n_{2}\right)
$$

and by (2.11) $2 X_{a}\left(n_{2}\right) Y_{a}\left(n_{2}\right) \mid Y_{a}\left(2 n_{2}\right)$ and thus $2 c^{2} \mid e$, so there is some $j \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $e=(j+1) 2 c^{2}$, which is (4). By setting $g=a+f^{2}\left(f^{2}-a\right), i=X_{g}(n), h=Y_{g}(n)$ we have (5) and (3), and (5) together with (2) and (4) gives (6). By (2.15),

$$
h=\Upsilon_{g}(n) \equiv n \quad \bmod g-1 \text { and } g-1 \equiv 0 \quad \bmod 2 c
$$

we have (8). By (2.14),

$$
h=Y_{g}(n) \equiv Y_{a}(n)=n \quad \bmod g-a \text { and } g-a \equiv 0 \quad \bmod f
$$

we have (7).
Now that we have proven that $c=Y_{a}(n)$ is a Diophantine equation, it follows immediately that $d=X_{a}(n)$ is Diophantine as well. By definition

$$
d=X_{a}(n) \Leftrightarrow d^{2}-\left(a^{2}-1\right)\left(Y_{a}(n)\right)^{2}=1,
$$

and the right-hand side is Diophantine.

### 2.4 Exponentiation, Binomial Coefficient and Factorial are Diophantine

We are now able to show that both exponentiation and the binomial coefficient are Diophantine. To do so, we use the properties of the Diophantine functions $X_{a}(n)$ and $Y_{a}(n)$ developed in the previous section.

Theorem 2.4.1. The exponential relation $m=k^{n}$ is Diophantine.
Proof. We can assume that $n \geq 1$ and $k \geq 2$. We will show that for $a \geq Y_{k}(n+1)$ we have

$$
k^{n}=\operatorname{rem}\left(X_{a}(n)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n), 2 a k-k^{2}-1\right) .
$$

Since the remainder function and both $X_{a}(n)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n)$ and $2 a k-k^{2}-1$ are Diophantine, the exponential relation is Diophantine as well. For all $k \geq 2, k<(2 k-1)$ and thus with (2.16) and the assumption that $a \geq Y_{k}(n+1)$ we have

$$
k \leq k^{n}<(2 k-1)^{n} \leq Y_{k}(n+1) \leq a
$$

and thus $k+1 \leq a$. With this we have

$$
a<a k<a k+k-1=a k+(k+1) k-k^{2}-1 \leq a k+a k-k^{2}-1=2 a k-k^{2}-1 .
$$

Lemma 2.3.4 gives us the congruence

$$
X_{a}(n)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n) \equiv k^{n} \quad \bmod \left(2 a k-k^{2}-1\right),
$$

and since $0<k^{n}<a<\left(2 a k-k^{2}-1\right), k^{n}$ has to be the remainder of $\left(2 a k-k^{2}-1\right)$ divided by $X_{a}(n)-(a-k) Y_{a}(n)$.

Similar to the Gödel function in 2.2, we introduce a code representing tuples of arbitrary length over $\mathbb{N}_{0}$ to show that the binomial coefficient is Diophantine.

Definition. Let $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. We call $(a, b, c)$ the positional code of the tuple $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)$, if

$$
\left(a_{n} a_{n-1} \ldots a_{1}\right)_{b}=a
$$

and $c=n$, that means $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$ are the digits in the $b$-ary representation of $a$ of length $n$.

The $b$-ary representation of a number $a$ is always the same, but to uniquely determine a tuple corresponding to $a$ and $b$, the length of the tuple must be given. Otherwise, the corresponding tuple can be arbitrarily long with any amount of leading zeros. When asking for a specific element in the tuple, however, the length of the tuple can be omitted. Consider the function

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Elem }: \mathbb{N}_{0}^{3} & \rightarrow \mathbb{N}_{0} \\
(a, b, d) & \mapsto a_{d}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $a_{d}$ is the $d$-th digit in the $b$-ary representation of $a$, i.e.

$$
a=a_{n} b^{n-1}+\cdots+a_{d+1} b^{d}+a_{d} b^{d-1}+a_{d-1} b^{d-2}+\cdots+a_{1}=A b^{d}+a_{d} b^{d-1}+B
$$

for unique $A, B, a_{i} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $B<b^{d-1}$ and $a_{i}<b$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. With Theorem 2.4.1, it is easy to see that this function is Diophantine:

$$
e=\operatorname{Elem}(a, b, d) \Leftrightarrow \exists x, y, z\left[(d=z+1) \wedge\left(a=x b^{d}+e b^{z}+y\right) \wedge(e<b) \wedge\left(y<b^{x}\right)\right]
$$

Proposition 2.4.2. The binomial coefficient relation $m=\binom{a}{b}$ is Diophantine.
Proof. To prove this, we will use the b-ary representation of non-negative integers. First note that for large enough $d \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$, the code $\left((d+1)^{n}, d, n+1\right)$ stands for the $n+1$-tuple

$$
\left(\binom{n}{0},\binom{n}{1}, \ldots,\binom{n}{n}\right) .
$$

This means that we can describe the binomial relation with the function Elem, which we have shown to be Diophantine. Indeed, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(2^{n}+2\right)^{n} & =\left(\left(2^{n}+1\right)+1\right)^{n} \\
& =\binom{n}{0}\left(2^{n}+1\right)^{0}+\binom{n}{1}\left(2^{n}+1\right)^{1}+\ldots+\binom{n}{m}\left(2^{n}+1\right)^{m}+\ldots\binom{n}{n}\left(2^{n}+1\right)^{n},
\end{aligned}
$$

and since $2^{n}+1>\binom{n}{k}$ for all $0 \leq k \leq n$,

$$
m=\binom{a}{b} \Leftrightarrow m=\operatorname{Elem}\left(\left(2^{n}+2\right)^{n}, 2^{n}+1, m+1\right)
$$

Lemma 2.4.3. Let $k, n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $n>(2 k)^{(k+1)}$. Then

$$
k!=\left\lfloor\frac{n^{k}}{\binom{n}{m}}\right\rfloor .
$$

Proof. By the definition of the floor-function, it suffices to show that $k!\leq n^{k} /\binom{n}{m}<$ $k!+1$. For the left-hand side, we have

$$
k!<k!\frac{1}{(1-1 / n) \ldots(1-(k-1) / n)}=\frac{n^{k}}{\binom{n}{m}} .
$$

For the right hand side, first note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{(1-k / n)^{k}} & =\left(1+\frac{k}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{k}{n}\right)^{i}\right)^{k}<\left(1+\frac{k}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{i}\right)^{k}=\left(1+\frac{2 k}{n}\right)^{k} \\
& =\sum_{j=0}^{k}\binom{k}{j}\binom{2 k}{n}^{j}<1+\frac{2 k}{n} \sum_{j=0}^{k}\binom{k}{j}<1+\frac{k 2^{k+1}}{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{n^{k}}{\binom{n}{m}} & =\frac{1}{(1-1 / n) \ldots(1-(k-1) / n)}<k!\frac{1}{(1-k / n)^{k}} \\
& <k!+\frac{k!k 2^{k+1}}{n}<k!+\frac{(2 k)^{k+1}}{n}<k!+1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 2.4.4. The factorial relation $m=k!$ is Diophantine.
Proof. According to the previous lemma, it sufficed to show that $\left\lfloor n^{k} /\binom{n}{m}\right\rfloor$ is Diophantine. This is true, since the floor of a fraction is Diophantine as

$$
\begin{equation*}
z=\lfloor x / y\rfloor \Leftrightarrow y z \leq x \leq y(z+1) \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

and as we have seen, both $n^{k}$ and $\binom{n}{m}$ are Diophantine as well.

### 2.5 D-Sets are Diophantine

D-sets are defined to be the closure of Diophantine sets with respect to finite unions, finite intersections, finite direct products, projections and the application of the bounded universal quantifier. As we have seen in 2.1.1, in order to show that the class of Diophantine sets equals the class of D-sets, it suffices to show that Diophantine sets are closed under the bounded universal quantifier. So for this section, fix a nonempty Diophantine set $D \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+1}$ and assume that $E \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+1}$ is the result of applying the bounded universal quantifier on $D$, i.e.
$\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y\right) \in E \Leftrightarrow\left(\forall k \in\{1, \ldots, y\} \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}\right)\left[f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)=0\right]$,
where $f$ is the Diophantine representation of $D$. We denote by $d=\operatorname{deg} f$ and by $c$ the sum of the absolute values of the coefficients of $f$. Next we need to define the following sets. Let

$$
X=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, Y, N, K, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+m+4},
$$

and define the sets $E_{1}, E_{2}, E_{3}, E_{3+i} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n+m+4}$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ by

$$
\begin{align*}
X \in E_{1} & \Leftrightarrow N \geq c\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n} y Y\right)^{d} \text { and } Y<\min _{i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}} Y_{i}  \tag{2.25}\\
X \in E_{2} & \Leftrightarrow 1+K N!=\prod_{k=1}^{y}(1+k N!)  \tag{2.26}\\
X \in E_{3} & \Leftrightarrow f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, K, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \equiv 0 \bmod (1+K N!)  \tag{2.27}\\
X \in E_{3+i} & \Leftrightarrow \prod_{j<Y}\left(Y_{i}-j\right) \equiv 0 \bmod (1+K N!) . \tag{2.28}
\end{align*}
$$

Further we define $E^{\prime}$ as the projection of $\cap_{i=1}^{m+3} E_{i}$ to the first $n+1$ coordinates.
Lemma 2.5.1. Let $E, E^{\prime}$ be given as above. Then $E \subseteq E^{\prime}$.
Proof. Let $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y\right) \in E$ and $y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}, k \in\{1, \ldots, y\}$ such that for the Diophantine representation $f$ of $D$ we have $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}\right)=0$. Set

$$
Y=\max \left(\{y\} \cup\left\{y_{i, k} \mid 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq k \leq y\right\}\right) .
$$

Recall the function gd. For any tuple $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$ one can find $u, t$ such that $\operatorname{gd}(u, k, t)=a_{k}$ for all $k \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. It is easy to show that for a given $t$, one can find arbitrarily large $t^{\prime} \geq t$ such that there is an $u^{\prime}$ with the same property, i.e. $\operatorname{gd}\left(u^{\prime}, k, t^{\prime}\right)=a_{k}$. Assume now that we have some $N, Y_{i}$ such that

$$
\operatorname{gd}\left(Y_{i}, k, N!\right)=\operatorname{rem}\left(1+k N!, Y_{i}\right)=y_{i, k}
$$

for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ and $k \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Then

$$
Y_{i}+(1+k N!)=q(1+k N!)+y_{i, k}+(1+k N!)=(q+1)(1+k N!)+y_{i, k}
$$

thus for given $N$ we can choose $Y_{i}$ arbitrarily large by subsequently adding the term $(1+k N!)$. This means that we can choose $N, Y_{i}$ such that (2.25) is satisfied. For our given $y$ and $N$, choose $K$ such that (2.26) is fulfilled. We still need to show that

$$
\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, Y, N, K, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \in \bigcap_{i=3}^{m+3} E_{i}
$$

By definition of the function gd, we have $(1+k N!) \mid\left(Y_{i}-y_{i, k}\right)$ and with $y_{i, k} \leq Y$ we have $(1+k N!) \mid \prod_{j<Y}\left(Y_{i}-y_{i, k}\right)$. For any $1 \leq k_{1}<k_{2} \leq y$ we have $\operatorname{gcd}\left(1+k_{1} N!, 1+k_{2} N!\right)=$ 1 and thus $E_{3+1}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$. To show that $E_{3}$ holds, first note that since $(1+K N!) \equiv 0 \equiv(1+k N!) \bmod 1+k N!$ by $E_{1}$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(1+k N!, N!)=1$, we have $k \equiv K \bmod 1+k N!$. Moreover, we have rem $\left(1+k N!, Y_{i}\right)=y_{i, k}$ and thus $Y_{i} \equiv y_{i, k}$ $\bmod 1+k N!$. This means that

$$
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, K, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \equiv f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}\right) \equiv 0 \bmod 1+k N!
$$

for all $k \in\{1, \ldots, y\}$ and again, since the $(1+k N!)$ are pairwise coprime, $E_{3}$ follows.
Lemma 2.5.2. Let $E, E^{\prime}$ be given as above. Then $E^{\prime} \subseteq E$.

Proof. Let $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, Y, N, K, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \in \bigcap_{i=3}^{m+3} E_{i}$ such that $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y\right) \in E^{\prime}$. We need to show that there are $y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}$ for each $k \in\{1, \ldots, y\}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y, y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}\right)=0 \tag{2.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

We claim that the choice $y_{i, k}=\operatorname{rem}\left(Y_{i}, p_{k}\right)$ fulfills this requirements, where $p_{j}$ is any fixed prime divisor of $1+k N!$. By $E_{2}$ and $E_{3+i}$ we have

$$
p_{k}|(1+k N!)|(1+K N!) \mid \prod_{j<Y} Y_{i}+j,
$$

for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ and thus $p_{k} \mid\left(Y_{i}-j\right)$ for some $j<Y$. Since $y_{i, k}$ is defined to be the remainder of $Y_{i}$ divided by $p_{k}$, it follows that $y_{i, k}<Y$. Since $f$ is a polynomial, we have $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, y_{1, k}, \ldots, x_{m, k}\right) \leq c\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n} k Y\right)^{d}$ and by $E_{1}$ this is bounded from above by $N$. By definition of the $p_{k}$, we have $p_{k}>N$ and thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}\right)<p_{k} . \tag{2.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Both congruences $E_{3}$ and $k \equiv K \bmod 1+k N$ ! also hold modulo $p_{k}$, and with $y_{i, k} \equiv Y_{i}$ $\bmod p_{k}$ we have that

$$
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, k, y_{1, k}, \ldots, y_{m, k}\right)=f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, K, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}\right) \equiv 0 \quad \bmod p_{k}
$$

so with (2.30) we have (2.29) and thus the claim follows.
Theorem 2.5.3. The class of Diophantine sets equals the class of $D$-Sets.

Proof. By the definition of D-sets, every Diophantine set is a D-set. As we have established before, to show that every D-set is Diophantine, it suffices to show that the class of Diophantine sets is closed under the bounded universal quantifier. With the two previous lemmas, the set $E$, which we obtain by applying the quantifier is equal to $E^{\prime}$. The sets $E_{1}, E_{2}, E_{3}$ and $E_{3+i}, i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ are given by the equations (2.25)-(2.28). Since both exponentiation and the factorial function are Diophantine, these sets are Diophantine as well, and as $E^{\prime}$ is a projection of the intersection of $E_{1}, E_{2}, E_{3}$ and $E_{3+i}$, it follows that $E$ is Diophantine as well.

### 2.6 Hilbert's Tenth Problem is Unsolvable

Let $D \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ and assume that we are interested in the positive integer solutions of

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=0 \tag{2.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next consider the system of equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& D\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=0 \\
& X_{1}=Y_{1,1}^{2}+Y_{1,2}^{2}+Y_{1,3}^{2}+Y_{1,4}^{2} \\
& \vdots  \tag{2.32}\\
& X_{n}=Y_{n, 1}^{2}+Y_{n, 2}^{2}+Y_{n, 3}^{2}+Y_{n, 4}^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

Since every natural number can be written as the sum of four squares, every solution of (2.32) is a solution to (2.31). This means that we can reduce Hilbert's tenth problem from finding solutions over the integers to finding solutions over the non-negative integers.

Theorem 2.6.1. Assume that Hilbert's tenth problem is solvable over the positive integers. Then every Diophantine set is recursive.

Proof. Let $D$ be a Diophantine set, and let $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+m}\right]$ be its Diophantine representation, i.e.

$$
D=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n} \mid \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m} \in \mathbb{N}_{0} \text { with } f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)=0\right\} .
$$

Let $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{N}_{0}^{n}$. Then, since Hilbert's tenth problem is solvable over $\mathbb{N}_{0}$, there is an algorithm that decides in finitely many steps whether there are some $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)=0 . \tag{2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

By the Church-Turing-Thesis, there is some Turing machine $M$ such that

$$
M\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)\right)= \begin{cases}1 & : \exists y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m} \in \mathbb{N}_{0} \text { satisfying (2.33) } \\ 0 & : \text { otherwise },\end{cases}
$$

meaning that $M$ decides $D$ and thus $D$ is recursive.

We can now use the fact that D-sets, Diophantine sets and recursively enumerable sets are the same to show that Hilbert's tenth problem has no solution.

Corollary 2.6.2. Hilbert's tenth problem over the integers is unsolvable.
Proof. Assume for the sake of a contradiction that Hilbert's tenth problem over the integers is solvable. Then, as we have deduced above, Hilbert's Tenth problem over the non-negative integers is solvable. Let $\mathcal{D}$ be the class of all Diophantine sets, $\mathcal{R}$ the class of all recursive languages and $\mathcal{R}_{\mathcal{E}}$ the class of all recursively enumerable languages. Then by Theorem 2.6.1 we have $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathcal{R}$, but since we have proved that the classes of D-sets, $\mathcal{R}_{\mathcal{E}}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ coincide, we have $\mathcal{R}_{\mathcal{E}} \subseteq \mathcal{R}$, contradicting 2.1.3.

## 3 Number of Solutions of Equations over Finite Fields

The key exchange protocol that we are going to present in Chapter 5 can be implemented either over the integers or over a finite field. For the case of finite fields, we need to establish a bound on the number of solutions over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ for certain polynomials. To do so, some notions from Algebraic Geometry are introduced.

### 3.1 Varieties over Finite Fields

In the following, let $K$ always denote an algebraically closed field.

### 3.1.1 Definitions and Notation

Definition. Let $K$ be an algebraically closed field, and denote by $\mathbb{A}^{n}=K^{n}$ the affine $n$-space. For polynomials $f_{1} \ldots, f_{m} \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ we define the affine algebraic set $V\left(f_{1}, \ldots f_{m}\right) \subseteq$ $\mathbb{A}^{n}$ as

$$
V\left(f_{1}, \ldots f_{m}\right)=\left\{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{A}^{n} \mid f_{1}(\mathbf{x})=\cdots=f_{m}(\mathbf{x})=0\right\} .
$$

We say that the polynomials in the above equation define the affine algebraic set $V\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}\right)$. The set of such polynomial is not unique in general. Therefore, for any algebraic set $V \subseteq \mathbb{A}^{n}$ and any $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m} \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $V=V\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}\right)$, we say that $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}$ are the defining polynomials of $V$.
It is easy to show that for a set $S$ of polynomials, we have $V(S)=V((S))$, where (S) is the ideal generated by $S$. In fact, for any affine algebraic set $X \subset A^{n}$, we define the ideal of $X$ to be the ideal $I(X) \unlhd K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $V(I(X))=X$.
Moreover, for any ideals $I, J \unlhd K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ we have $V(I) \cup V(J)=V(I J)$ and $V(I) \cap$ $V(J)=V(I+J)$. Therefore, we can identify affine algebraic sets as the closed sets of a topology, which we call the Zariski topology. This allows us to define irreducible algebraic sets via topology.

Definition. Let $X$ be a topological space. Then $X$ is said to be reducible, if $X=X_{1} \cup X_{2}$, where $X_{1}, X_{2} \varsubsetneqq X$ are closed sets. Otherwise, we call $X$ irreducible.

An irreducible affine algebraic set is called an affine variety. Note that an affine algebraic set $X \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ is an affine variety if and only if $I(X) \unlhd K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ is prime.
By Hilbert's Basis Theorem, $K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ is a Noetherian ring and thus every affine algebraic set is a Noetherian topological space, i.e. every descending chain of closed
sets is stationary. Similar to prime decomposition in a unique factorization domain, we can factor any algebraic set into so called irreducible components.

Proposition 3.1.1. Every Noetherian topological space $X$ can be written as a finite union

$$
X=X_{1} \cup \cdots \cup X_{m}
$$

where $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ are irreducible closed subsets of $X$. If $X_{i} \not \subset X_{j}$ for all $i \neq j$, then the union is unique up to permutation.

Proof. First we show existence. We assume that $X$ can not be written as a union as given above, so $X$ is not irreducible and thus we can assume that $X=X_{1} \cup X_{2}$ for $X_{1}, X_{2} \varsubsetneqq X$. This means that, without loss of generality, $X_{1}$ can not be written as a union as given above. Repeating this argument $r$ times leads to a descending chain $X_{r} \varsubsetneqq \ldots \varsubsetneqq X_{1} \varsubsetneqq X$, which can not be arbitrarily long since $X$ is a Noetherian topological space. To show uniqueness, assume that $X=X_{1} \cup \ldots \cup X_{m}=Y_{1} \cup \ldots Y_{k}$. This means that $X_{1} \subseteq Y_{1} \cup \ldots \cup Y_{k}$ and hence $X_{1}=\left(Y_{1} \cap X_{1}\right) \cup \ldots\left(Y_{k} \cap X_{1}\right)$. Since $X_{1}$ is irreducible, we have $X_{1}=Y_{1} \cap X_{1}$ without loss of generality. This means that $X_{2} \cup \ldots \cup X_{m}=Y_{2} \cup \ldots Y_{k}$, and we are done by induction.

A crucial feature of every algebraic set is its dimension. This can again be defined by the means of topology.

Definition. Let $X$ be an irreducible topological space, and assume that

$$
\varnothing \neq X_{1} \varsubsetneqq X_{2} \varsubsetneqq \cdots \nsubseteq X_{n-1} \varsubsetneqq X_{n}=X
$$

is the longest chain of irreducible closed subsets of $X$. Then we define $n$ to be the dimension of $X$.

This means that we can define the dimension of an affine variety $V$ as the longest chain of subvarieties. For an affine algebraic set with irreducible components $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{k}$, we define the dimension as the maximum of the dimensions of $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{k}$. Note that this is a valid definition, since the number of irreducible components is finite and the decomposition is unique by Proposition 3.1.1. Moreover, the dimension of an affine variety is finite by the fact that $K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ is Noetherian.

It is an immediate consequence of this definition, that for affine varieties $X$ and $Y$ with $X \subsetneq Y$ we have $\operatorname{dim} X<\operatorname{dim} Y$. One can show that for any irreducible $f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] \backslash K$, we have $\operatorname{dim} V(f)=n-1$. We call such an affine variety a hypersurface. Moreover, if $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{d} \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that the $f_{i}$ are pairwise coprime, then $\operatorname{dim} V\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{d}\right)=n-d$.

In 3.2 we will make an estimate on the number of points of algebraic curves over a finite field. In higher dimensions, an algebraic curve is defined as follows:

Definition. Let $C \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$. Then $C$ is called an algebraic curve, if it is an affine variety of dimension 1.

We also introduce the notion of the degree.

Definition. Let $V \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be an affine variety. We define the degree of $V$ as

$$
\operatorname{deg} V=\max \left\{\#(V \cap L) \mid L \subset \mathbb{A}^{n} \text { linear with } \operatorname{codim}(L)=\operatorname{dim}(V) \text { and } \#(V \cap L)<\infty\right\} .
$$

In general, let $W \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be an affine algebraic set, and $C_{1}, \ldots, C_{h}$ its irreducible components. Then

$$
\operatorname{deg} W=\sum_{i=1}^{h} \operatorname{deg} C_{i}
$$

Note that, by definition, it follows that for a zero-dimensional affine variety, the degree of the affine variety equals the number of its points. Moreover, $\operatorname{deg} \mathbb{A}^{n}=\#\left(\mathbb{A}^{n} \cap\{0\}\right)=$ 1. Also note that for any affine varieties $U, V \subseteq \mathbb{A}^{n}$, we have $\operatorname{deg} U \leq \operatorname{deg} V$ if $U \subseteq V$ and $\operatorname{deg}(A \cup B) \leq \operatorname{deg} A+\operatorname{deg} B$.

We call an affine variety with dimension $n-1$ a hypersurface. An absolutely irreducible hypersurface has an absolutely irreducible polynomial as its defining polynomial, and the degree of a hypersurface can be seen immediately.

Proposition 3.1.2. Let $H \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be a hypersurface with defining polynomial $f$. Then the degree of $H$ equals the degree of $f$.

Proof. Let $\operatorname{deg} f=d$. As every hypersurface has dimension $n-1$, we need to intersect it with a linear subspace $L$ of dimension 1 . After a change of coordinates, we may assume that $L$ is given by the equation $X_{2}=X_{3}=\cdots X_{n}=0$. This means that for a point $P \in \mathbb{A}^{n}$, we have $P \in H \cap L$ if and only if $P=(k, 0, \cdots, 0)$ for some $k \in K$ and $f(P)=0$. This means that $P$ needs to be a zero of the polynomial $f(X, 0, \ldots, 0) \in K[X]$, and since $K$ is algebraically closed, there are exactly $d$ such points.

We will also need to introduce the notion of affine linear varieties.
Definition. Let $K$ be a field and $\mathbb{A}^{n}=K^{n}$ the affine $n$-space with underlying vector space $\mathbb{V}$. We say that $L$ is an affine linear variety, if there is some linear subspace $S \subseteq \mathbb{V}$ and some $a \in \mathbb{A}^{n}$ such that $L=a+S$. We further define the dimension $\operatorname{dim} L=\operatorname{dim}_{K} S$, where $\operatorname{dim}_{K} S$ is the dimension of the $K$-vector space $S$..

Note that the dimension of an affine linear variety is well defined. If we have $L=$ $a+S$, then the subspace $S$ is unique, whereas we can choose any $s \in S$ and have $L=(a+s)+S$.

Definition. Let $L_{1}, L_{2}$ be affine linear varieties. Then we say that $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ are parallel, if they have the same defining linear subspace $S$, i.e. $L_{1}=a_{1}+S$ and $L_{1}=a_{2}+S$ for some $a_{1}, a_{2} \in \mathbb{A}^{n}$ and some linear subspace $S$.

### 3.1.2 Basic Inequalities

In this section we develop three basic inequalities, which will be needed frequently later on. To do so, we will make use of the general version of Bezout's inequality, as given in [12]. Moreover, we will follow [5] to prove the important Theorem 3.3.11. As we will mostly work with affine varieties over $\mathbb{A}^{n}=\overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}{ }^{n}$ which are defined by polynomials over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$, we will call such varieties $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-varieties.
Theorem 3.1.3 (Bezout's inequality). Let $V, W \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be affine varieties. Then

$$
\operatorname{deg}(V \cap W) \leq \operatorname{deg} V \operatorname{deg} W
$$

The next lemma is given in [17].
Lemma 3.1.4. Let $V_{i} \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}, i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ be affine subvarieties. Then

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} V_{i}\right) \leq \operatorname{deg} V_{1}\left(\max _{i>1} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} V_{1}}
$$

Proof. We prove this by induction on $n$. For $n=1$, set $V_{2}=\mathbb{A}^{n}$. Then

$$
\operatorname{deg} V_{1}\left(\max _{i>1} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} V_{1}}=\operatorname{deg} V_{1}\left(\operatorname{deg} \mathbb{A}^{n}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} V_{1}}=\operatorname{deg} V_{1} .
$$

So assume that $n>1$ and let $V_{1}=C_{1} \cup \cdots \cup C_{h}$ be the decomposition of $V_{1}$ into irreducible components. For some fixed $j \in\{1, \ldots, h\}$ we want to show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j} \cap \bigcap_{i=2}^{n+1} V_{i}\right) \leq \operatorname{deg} C_{j}\left(\max _{i>1} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} C_{j}} . \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the case $C_{j} \subseteq V_{2}$ we are done by the induction hypothesis, so assume that $C_{j} \not \subset V_{2}$. Then, since $C_{j}$ is irreducible, we have $\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right)<\operatorname{dim} C_{j}$. Again, by the induction hypothesis we have

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j} \cap \bigcap_{i=2}^{n+1} V_{i}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right) \cap \bigcap_{i=3}^{n+1} V_{i}\right) \leq \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right)\left(\max _{i>2} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right)} .
$$

With the Bezout inequality we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right)\left(\max _{i>2} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right)} & \leq \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j} \cap V_{2}\right)\left(\max _{i>2} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} C_{j}-1} \\
& \leq \operatorname{deg} C_{j}\left(\max _{i>1} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} C_{j}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and hence 3.1 follows. The dimensions of the $C_{i}$ are bounded by $\operatorname{dim} V_{1}$, and therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{deg}\left(\bigcap_{i=1}^{n+1} V_{i}\right) & =\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1} \cap \bigcap_{i=2}^{n+1} V_{i}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(\left(C_{1} \cap \bigcap_{i=2}^{n+1} V_{i}\right) \cup \cdots \cup\left(C_{h} \cap \bigcap_{i=2}^{n+1} V_{i}\right)\right) \\
& \leq \sum_{j=1}^{h} \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j} \cap \bigcap_{i=2}^{n+1} V_{i}\right) \leq\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} \operatorname{deg} C_{j}\right)\left(\max _{i>1} \operatorname{deg} V_{i}\right)^{\operatorname{dim} V_{1}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The next lemma gives the first estimate on the number of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-points of an affine variety.
Lemma 3.1.5. Let $V \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be an $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-variety with $\operatorname{dim} V=r \geq 0$ and $\operatorname{deg} V=\delta>0$. Then

$$
\#\left(V \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right) \leq \delta q^{r} .
$$

Proof. For all $x \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$ and $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, we have $f_{i}(x)=0$ for $f_{i}=X_{i}^{q}-X_{i} \in$ $\mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Let

$$
W_{i}=\left\{\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{A}^{n} \mid f_{i}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)\right\} .
$$

Then we can write

$$
V \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}=V \cap W_{1} \cap \cdots \cap W_{n}
$$

and thus by Lemma 3.1.4 and since $V \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ is zero-dimensional, we have

$$
\#\left(V \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V \cap W_{1} \cap \cdots \cap W_{n}\right) \leq \operatorname{deg} V\left(\max _{i>1} \operatorname{deg} W_{i}\right)^{r}=\delta q^{r} .
$$

Lemma 3.1.6. Let $\delta \in \mathbb{N}$ and $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right], m \geq 2$ such that $\operatorname{deg} f_{i} \leq \delta$ and $\operatorname{gcd} f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}=1$ over $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Further let $V \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be the variety defined by $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m}$. Then

$$
\left|V \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right| \leq \delta^{2} q^{n-2}
$$

Proof. We prove this by induction on $m$. Assume that $m=2$. Then $\operatorname{gcd}\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right)=1$ and thus $V\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right)=n-2$. Moreover, by Bezout's inequality we have

$$
\operatorname{deg} V\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V\left(f_{1}\right) \cap V\left(f_{2}\right)\right) \leq \operatorname{deg} f_{1} \operatorname{deg} f_{2} \leq \delta^{2}
$$

hence by Lemma 3.1.5 we deduce that $\left|V\left(f_{1}, f_{2}\right) \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right| \leq \delta^{2} q^{n-2}$. Assume now that $m \geq 3$ and consider the polynomial $v=\operatorname{gcd}\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{m-1}\right)$ and let $d=\operatorname{deg} v$. Moreover, we define the polynomials $w_{i} \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $v=f_{i} w_{i}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m-1\}$. Then, by the definition of the greatest common divisor, $\operatorname{gcd}\left(w_{1}, \ldots, w_{m-1}\right)=1$.
Assume that for some $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ we have $\mathbf{x} \in V$. Then either $v(\mathbf{x})=0=f_{m}(\mathbf{x})$ or $w_{i}(\mathbf{x})=0=f_{m}(\mathbf{x})$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m-1\}$. For the first case, $\mathbf{x} \in V\left(v, f_{m}\right)$. Again by Bezout's inequality we have $\operatorname{deg} V\left(v, f_{m}\right) \leq d \delta$ and thus $\left|V\left(v, f_{m}\right) \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right| \leq d \delta q^{n-2}$. For the case $w_{i}(\mathbf{x})=0=f_{m}(\mathbf{x})$ for all possible $i$, we use the fact that $\operatorname{deg} w_{i} \leq \delta-d$ and the induction hypothesis to obtain $\left|V\left(w_{1}, \ldots, w_{m-1}, f_{m}\right) \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right| \leq(\delta-d)^{2} q^{n-2}$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|V \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right| & \leq\left|V\left(v, f_{m}\right) \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right|+\left|V\left(w_{1}, \ldots, w_{m-1}, f_{m}\right) \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right| \\
& \leq d \delta q^{n-1}+(\delta-d)^{2} q^{n-2} \leq \delta^{2} q^{n-2}
\end{aligned}
$$

since $0 \leq d \leq \delta$.

### 3.1.3 The Projective Space

Definition. Let $K$ be a field. The projective $n$ space $\mathbb{P}^{n}$ is the set of all linear subspaces of the $K$-vector space $K^{n+1}$ of dimension 1 .

Let the relation $\sim \in K^{n+1} \times K^{n+1}$ be defined as

$$
a \sim b \text { if and only if } \exists \lambda \in K: a=\lambda b
$$

for $a, b \in K^{n+1}$. This is an equivalence relation, and since one-dimensional subspaces of $K^{n+1}$ are spanned by single vectors, we can write

$$
\mathbb{P}^{n}=\left(K^{n+1} \backslash\{\mathbf{0}\}\right) / \sim
$$

We will denote an equivalence class of $\mathbb{P}^{n}$ by $\left(a_{0}: a_{1}: \ldots: a_{n}\right)$ and call this a point in $\mathbb{P}^{n}$. Similar to affine spaces, we define a projective algebraic set $V \subset \mathbb{P}^{n}$ as the zero-set of homogeneous polynomials, i.e. $V$ is a projective algebraic set if there is a subset $M \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ of homogeneous polynomials with

$$
V=\left\{\left(a_{0}: \ldots: a_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{P}^{n} \mid f\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)=0\right\}
$$

Note that this definition makes sense for homogeneous polynomials: If $\operatorname{deg} f=d$, then $f\left(\lambda a_{0}, \ldots, \lambda a_{n}\right)=\lambda^{d} f\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)$ and therefore $f\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)=0$ if and only if $f\left(\lambda a_{0}, \ldots, \lambda a_{n}\right)=0$ for any $\lambda \in K$.

The Zariski topology on $\mathbb{P}^{n}$ is defined to be the topology whose closed sets are projective algebraic sets. Affine varieties and the dimension of affine algebraic sets are defined via topology, and we define projective varieties and the dimension of projective algebraic sets analogously.
The notion of an algebraic curve was introduced in section 3.1.1. We will only need affine and projective algebraic curves in the plane.
Definition. Let $C \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}$. Then $C$ is a plane projective curve, if there is a homogeneous $f \in K[X, Y, Z]$ such that $C=V(f)$. If $C^{\prime} \subset \mathbb{A}^{2}$, then $C^{\prime}$ is a plane affine curve if there is some $f^{\prime} \in K[X, Y]$ such that $C=V\left(f^{\prime}\right)$.

Note that every plane affine and projective curve is also an algebraic curve. We can classify curves in smooth and singular curves. The following definition is only given for plane projective curves, the definition for affine curves is analogously. We say that a plane curve is (absolutely) irreducible, if its defining polynomial is (absolutely) irreducible.

Definition. Let $C \subset \mathbb{P}^{2}$ be a plane projective curve and $F \in K[X, Y, Z]$ homogeneous such that $C=V(F)$. Let $P=(x: y: 1)$ be a point on $C$ and let $f=F(X, Y, 1) \in K[X, Y]$. Further let

$$
f=\sum_{i, j \geq 0} c_{i, j}(X-x)^{i}(Y-y)^{j}, \quad c_{i, j} \in K
$$

be the Taylor expansion of $f$ at the point $(x, y)$. Then

$$
\operatorname{ord}_{P}(C)=\min \left\{i+j \mid c_{i, j} \neq 0\right\}
$$

is the order of the point $P$ of $C$. $C$ is called singular at the point $P, i f \operatorname{ord}_{P}(C)>1$ and regular otherwise. If there exists a point $P$ of $C$ such that $P$ is singular, then $C$ is called singular, and $C$ is called smooth otherwise.

It is easy to show that there are only finitely many singular points for a given singular plane curve.

Definition. Let $f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be a non-homogeneous polynomial with $\operatorname{deg} f=d$. Then

$$
f^{h}=X_{0}^{d} f\left(\frac{X_{1}}{X_{0}}, \ldots, \frac{X_{n}}{X_{0}}\right) \in K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]
$$

is the homogenization of $f$.
Let $V \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be an affine variety with a subset of polynomials $F \subset K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ defining the variety, i.e. $V(F)=V$. Then the projective closure of $V$ is the projective variety

$$
V^{\prime}=\left\{P \in \mathbb{P}^{n} \mid \forall f \in F: f^{h}(P)=0\right\} .
$$

It follows from the definition that for a polynomial $f$ in $n$ variables of degree $d$, the homogenization $f^{h}$ is a polynomial in $n+1$ variables of degree $d$. Moreover, irreducibility is invariant under homogenization:

Proposition 3.1.7. Let $f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be irreducible. Then its homogenization $f^{h} \in$ $K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ is irreducible.

Proof. Let $d=\operatorname{deg} f=\operatorname{deg} f^{h}$ and assume that $f^{h}$ factors into $f^{h}=p q$. Assume that $p$ is not homogeneous. Then $p$ has a term $t$ with $\operatorname{deg} t<\operatorname{deg} p$, meaning that $\operatorname{deg} t q<$ $\operatorname{deg} p+\operatorname{deg} q=\operatorname{deg} f^{h}$, which is a contradiction since the term with the highest degree of $t q$ appears in $f^{h}$. Therefore we can assume that $p$ and $q$ are homogeneous. Thus

$$
f=f^{h}\left(1, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=p\left(1, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right) q\left(1, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right),
$$

so, without loss of generality, $p\left(1, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ is a unit. This is only possible if $p=c X_{0}^{m}$ for some $c \in K$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$, hence $X_{0} \mid f^{h}$, which is not possible by the construction of the homogenization. It follows that $f^{h}$ is irreducible.

### 3.1.4 The Non-singular Model of a Curve

Definition. Let $X$ be a topological space. A presheaf $\mathcal{F}$ of rings on $X$ consists of the following:

- For every open $U \subset X$ a ring $\mathcal{F}(U)$
- For all pairs $U, V$ with $U \subset V \subset X$ a map $\rho_{U, V}: \mathcal{F}(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(V)$

Moreover $\rho_{U, V}$ needs to satisfy the following:

- $\rho_{U, U}$ is the identity map for all $U \subset X$
- For any $U \subset V \subset W$ we have $\rho_{V, U} \circ \rho_{W, V}=\rho_{W, u}$.

A presheaf $\mathcal{F}$ is called a sheaf, if it has the subsequent property:

- Let $U \subset X$ be open with an open cover $U \subset \bigcup_{i \in I} U_{i}$ such that for all $s_{i} \in \mathcal{F}\left(U_{i}\right)$ and $s_{j} \in \mathcal{F}\left(U_{j}\right), i, j \in I$, we have $s_{i}\left|U_{i} \cap U_{j}=s_{j}\right| U_{i} \cap U_{j}$. Then there is a unique $s \in \mathcal{F}(U)$ such that $s \mid U_{U_{i}}=s_{i}$ for all $i \in I$.

Note that a presheaf is in fact a functor $\mathcal{F}$ from topological spaces to sets. Moreover, instead of rings, we can define a presheaf with categories. In the following, we will usually take the ring of $K$-valued functions as the underlying ring for sheaves, i.e. for every open $U$ we have $\mathcal{F}(U): U \rightarrow K$. We will denote such sheaves as sheaves of $K$-valued functions. We will also denote pairs $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ as ringed spaces, if $X$ is a topological space and $\mathcal{O}_{X}$ is a sheaf of rings on $X$.

Definition. Let $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right),\left(Y, \mathcal{O}_{Y}\right)$ be ringed spaces where $\mathcal{O}_{X}$ and $\mathcal{O}_{Y}$ are sheaves of $K$-valued functions, and let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be a function. For any open set $U \subset Y$ and any function $\varphi: U \rightarrow K$ we denote by $f^{*} \varphi$ the composition $\varphi \circ f: f^{-1}(U) \rightarrow K$. Then $f$ is called a morphism, if

- $f$ is continuous and
- for every open $U \subset Y$ we have $f^{*} \mathcal{O}_{Y}(U) \subset \mathcal{O}_{X}\left(f^{-1}(U)\right)$.

We can extend the definition of affine varieties to ringed spaces.
Definition. Let $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ be a ringed space. Then $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ is called an affine variety, if

- $X$ is irreducible
- $\mathcal{O}_{X}$ is a sheaf of $K$-valued functions
- $X$ is isomorphic to an irreducible topological space in the Zariski topology.

Definition. Let $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ be a ringed space. Then $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$ is called a prevariety, if

- $X$ is irreducible
- $\mathcal{O}_{X}$ is a sheaf of K-valued functions
- There exists a finite open cover $X \subset \bigcup_{i \in I} U_{i}$
such that $\left(U_{i}, \mathcal{O}_{X} \mid u_{i}\right)$ is an affine variety for all $i \in I$.
Every affine variety is a prevariety by the trivial finite open cover $X \subset X$. We can usually write $X$ for a prevariety and affine varietiy instead of $\left(X, \mathcal{O}_{X}\right)$, if we omit the structure of $\mathcal{O}_{X}$.

Definition. Let $X$ be a prevariety. Then $X$ is a variety, if for every prevariety $Y$ and all morphisms $f_{1}, f_{2}: Y \rightarrow X$, the set $\left\{P \in Y \mid f_{1}(P)=f_{2}(P)\right\}$ is closed in $Y$.

Now we are able to introduce the birational map.
Definition. Let $X$ and $Y$ be varieties. A rational map from $X$ to $Y$, denoted by $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is a morphism $f: U \rightarrow Y$, where $\varnothing \neq U \subset X$ is open. A rational map $f$ is called birational, if there is some rational map $g: Y \rightarrow X$ with $g \circ f=\operatorname{id}_{X}$ and $f \circ g=\operatorname{id}_{Y}$.

By definition, if there is a birational map $f: X \rightarrow Y$, then there are nonempty open subsets $U \subset X$ and $V \subset Y$ such that $U \simeq V$.

It is often necessary to work with a non-singular algebraic curve. To do so, it is possible to construct a curve which is birationally equivalent to a given one, but where the singularities are resolved. The following Theorem is given in [11].

Theorem 3.1.8. Let $C$ be a projective curve. Then there exists a non-singular projective curve $X$ and a birational map $f: X \rightarrow C$ which is onto. Moreover, if $X^{\prime}$ is a non-singular curve with birational map $f^{\prime}: X^{\prime} \rightarrow C$, then there is a unique isomorphism $g: X \rightarrow X^{\prime}$ such that $f^{\prime} \circ g=f$.

A birational map $f$ is onto in the usual sense: For every point $P \in C$ there is some $P^{\prime} \in X$ such that $f\left(P^{\prime}\right)=P$. For any plane projective curve, we will denote the nonsingular curve $X$ from the above theorem as the non-singular model of $C$, which is unique up to isomorphism. For a plane affine curve $C^{\prime}$, the non-singular model is the non-singular model of the projective closure of $C^{\prime}$. Let now $C$ be a plane projective curve with non-singular model $X$ and birational map $f: X \rightarrow C$. One can show that for a non-singular point $P \in C$, there is a unique $P^{\prime} \in X$ such that $f\left(P^{\prime}\right)=P$. Moreover, if $P$ is singular, there are finitely many such points $P^{\prime} \in X$. It can also be shown that for an irreducible $f$ defining $C$, the polynomial $f^{\prime}$ defining its non-singular model $X$ is also irreducible.

### 3.2 The Weil Bound for Plane Affine Curves

In this section, we will assume that all given curves are irreducible.

### 3.2.1 The Genus of a Curve

Definition. Let C be a smooth projective curve. A divisor on $C$ is a formal sum $D=\sum_{P \in C} n_{P} P$, where $n_{P} \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $n_{P}=0$ for all but finitely many $P$.

Denote the set of all divisors on $C$ by $\operatorname{Div}(C)$. We define the degree of a divisor $D=\sum n_{P} P$ to be $\operatorname{deg} D=\sum n_{P}$. Let $C \in \mathbb{P}^{n}$ be a smooth projective curve and denote by $k^{\prime}(C)$ the quotient field of the domain $K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] / I(C)$. We define the function field of C by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& k(C)=\left\{f \in k^{\prime}(C) \mid \exists g, h \in K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] / I(C):\right. \\
& \left.\quad g, h \text { homogeneous, } \operatorname{deg} g=\operatorname{deg} h \text { and } f=\frac{g}{h}\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For a Divisor $D=\sum n_{P} P$, the vector space of multiples of $-D$ is defined to be

$$
\mathcal{L}(D)=\left\{f \in k(C) \mid \forall P \in C: \operatorname{ord}_{P}(f) \geq-n_{P}\right\},
$$

and the dimension of $D$ is defined to be $\operatorname{dim} D=\operatorname{dim}_{K} \mathcal{L}(D)$, where $\operatorname{dim}_{K}$ denotes the dimension of a $K$-vector space.

## 3 Number of Solutions of Equations over Finite Fields

Definition. Let $C$ be a smooth projective curve. We define the genus $g$ of $C$ by

$$
g=\sup \{\operatorname{deg} D-\operatorname{dim} D+1 \mid D \in \operatorname{Div}(C)\}
$$

It can be shown that the genus is always finite. The genus of a singular projective curve is defined as the genus of its non-singular model, and the genus of an affine curve is the genus of its projective closure.

### 3.2.2 The Weil Bound

A famous estimate on the number of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ points of an absolutely irreducible smooth projective curve is given by the Hasse-Weil bound, which was proved in [41]. It uses the genus of the curve for an upper bound.

Theorem 3.2.1 (Hasse-Weil bound). Let C be a smooth, absolutely irreducible projective curve defined over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ of genus $g$, and denote by $N$ the number of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-points of $C$. Then

$$
|N-q-1| \leq 2 g \sqrt{q}
$$

We want to use the Hasse-Weil bound to estimate the number of points of a plane affine curve. In addition to that, we want to eliminate the genus from the inequality. To do so, we will use the following upper bound on the genus of a plane projective curve, which is given in [11].

Proposition 3.2.2. Let $C$ be a plane projective curve and $f \in K[X, Y, Z]$ with $C=V(f)$ and $\operatorname{deg} f=d$. Further let $g$ be the genus of $C$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
g \leq \frac{(d-1)(d-2)}{2}-\sum_{P \in C} \frac{\operatorname{ord}_{P}(C)\left(\operatorname{ord}_{P}(C)-1\right)}{2} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the right-hand side of the inequality is finite, since there are only finitely many singular points. We are therefore able to give a version of the Hasse-Weil bound for (possibly singular) plane absolutely irreducible affine curves.

Corollary 3.2.3. Let $C$ be a plane absolutely irreducible affine curve over a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ with $C=V(f)$ and $\operatorname{deg} f=d$. Denote by $N$ the number of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-points of $C$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
|N-q|<(d-1)(d-2) \sqrt{q}+d \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Let $C^{\prime}$ be the homogenization of $C$ and $X$ be the non-singular model of $C^{\prime}$. Further denote by $N^{(1)}$ the number of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-points of $C^{\prime}$ and $N^{(2)}$ the number of $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-points of $X$. By the Weil bound, we have

$$
\left|N^{(2)}-q-1\right| \leq 2 g \sqrt{q} .
$$

Moreover, by the definition of the non-singular model, we have

$$
\left|N^{(2)}-N^{(1)}\right| \leq \sum_{P \in C^{\prime}}\left(\operatorname{ord}_{P}\left(C^{\prime}\right)-1\right) \leq \sum_{P \in C^{\prime}} \operatorname{ord}_{P}\left(C^{\prime}\right)\left(\operatorname{ord}_{P}\left(C^{\prime}\right)-1\right)
$$

and therefore with (3.2) we obtain

$$
\left|N^{(1)}-q-1\right| \leq\left|N^{(2)}-N^{(1)}\right|+\left|N^{(2)}-q-1\right| \leq(d-1)(d-2) \sqrt{q} .
$$

As the projective closure of the plane affine curve has at most $d$ additional points at infinity, $N \leq N^{(1)} \leq N+d$ and thus $\left|N-N^{(1)}+1\right| \leq d-1$. Hence

$$
|N-q| \leq\left|N-N^{(1)}+1\right|+\left|N^{(1)}-q-1\right|<(d-1)(d-2) \sqrt{q}+d .
$$

### 3.3 Absolutely Irreducible Surfaces

Following [5], we are going to use estimates on the number of points and irreducible factors of polynomials restricted to linear affine varieties of dimension 2 to show Theorem 3.3.11. Unless stated otherwise, we are now going to assume that $\mathbb{A}^{n}=\overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}{ }^{n}$ for a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$.

### 3.3.1 Affine Linear Varieties

We are going to characterize affine linear varieties by their defining equations.
Definition. Let $L$ be an affine linear variety in $\mathbb{A}^{n}$ of dimension $m \in \mathbb{N}$. A parametrization $P$ of $L$ is an equation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
P: \mathbf{X}=\mathbf{n}+\mathbf{v}_{1} Y_{1}+\cdots+\mathbf{v}_{m} Y_{m}, \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\mathbf{X}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ and $\mathbf{v}_{i}=\left(v_{1, i}, \ldots, v_{n, i}\right)$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$, such that for all $l \in L$ there are some $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m} \in K$ with $l=\mathbf{x}$ and such that (3.4) holds.

Note that if $L$ is given by $L=a+S$ and $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{m} \in K^{n}$ is a basis of $S$, then

$$
\mathbf{X}=a+s_{1} Y_{1}+\cdots+s_{m} Y_{m}
$$

is a parametrization of $L$. Conversely, for every parametrization

$$
\mathbf{X}=\mathbf{n}+\mathbf{v}_{1} Y_{1}+\cdots+\mathbf{v}_{m} Y_{m},
$$

of $L$, we have $L=\mathbf{n}+\operatorname{span}\left(\mathbf{v}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{m}\right)$.
The main technique that is used in [5] and [37] to show bounds on the number of hypersurfaces in $\overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}{ }^{n}$ intersected with $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ is to analyze the number of factors of a polynomial $f$ restricted to affine linear varieties of dimension 2 with a certain parametrization.

Definition. Let $L$ be an affine linear variety in $\mathbb{A}^{n}$ with parametrization

$$
P: X_{i}=\eta_{i}+v_{i, 1} Y_{1}+\cdots+v_{i, m} Y_{m}
$$

for $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and let $f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Then a restriction of $f$ to $L$ is given by

Note that such a restriction is not unique, since it depends on the chosen parametrization. However, it can be shown that the number of irreducible factors of $f_{L}$ is always the same.

Let

$$
P: X_{i}=\eta_{i}+v_{i, 1} Y_{1}+\cdots+v_{i, m} Y_{m}, \quad i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}
$$

be the parametrization for some $L$, and let $f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Then $\mathbf{X}=T_{1} \mathbf{y}_{0}+n_{1}$, where $\mathbf{y}_{0}=\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{m}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \in K^{n}$ and $T_{1}=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m}, v_{m+1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)$ where $v_{m+1}, \ldots, v_{n} \in K^{n}$ such that $T_{1}$ is invertible. This means that $f_{L, P}=f\left(T_{1} \mathbf{y}_{0}+n_{1}\right)$. Next let $Q$ be another parametrization on $L$ such that $Q: \mathbf{X}=T_{2} \mathbf{y}_{0}+n_{2}$. Then there is an invertible $T \in K^{n \times n}$ and some $n \in K^{n}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{L, P}\left(\mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}\right)=f\left(T_{1} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}+n_{1}\right)=f\left(T\left(T_{2} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}+n_{2}\right)+n\right)=f_{L, Q}\left(T \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}+n\right) \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Theorem 3.3.1. Let $L$ be an affine linear variety in $\mathbb{A}^{n}, f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ and let $P_{1}, P_{2}$ be two parametrizations of $L$. Further let $N_{i}$ be the number of irreducible factors of the polynomial $f_{L, P_{i}}$ for $i \in\{1,2\}$. Then $N_{1}=N_{2}$.

Proof. Let $g \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right], T \in K^{n \times n}$ be a regular matrix and $n \in K^{n}$. We will first show that $g$ is irreducible if and only if $h:=g(T \mathbf{X}+n)$ is irreducible. So assume that $g$ is irreducible. Further let $h=h_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} \cdots h_{k}^{\alpha_{k}}$, where the $h_{i}$ are irreducible. Since $T$ is invertible, there is some matrix $\tilde{T}$ and some $\tilde{n} \in K n$ such that $h(\tilde{T} \mathbf{X}+\tilde{n})=g(\mathbf{X})$. Thus

$$
g(\mathbf{X})=h(\tilde{T} \mathbf{X}+\tilde{n})=h_{1}(\tilde{T} \mathbf{X}+\tilde{n})^{\alpha_{1}} \cdots h_{k}(\tilde{T} \mathbf{X}+\tilde{n})^{\alpha_{k}}
$$

and by the irreducibility of $g$ we have without loss of generality $h(\tilde{T} \mathbf{X}+\tilde{n})=C$. $h_{1}(\tilde{T} \mathbf{X}+\tilde{n})$ for some $C \in K$. But this means that $h(\mathbf{X})=C \cdot h_{1}(\mathbf{X})$, hence $h$ is irreducible. If we assume that $h$ is irreducible, we can show that $g$ is irreducible analogously. To prove the theorem, let

$$
f_{L, P_{1}}=\left(f_{L, P_{1}}^{(1)}\right)^{\alpha_{1}} \cdots\left(f_{L, P_{1}}^{\left(N_{1}\right)}\right)^{\alpha_{N_{1}}} \text { and } f_{L, P_{1}}=\left(f_{L, P_{2}}^{(1)}\right)^{\beta_{1}} \cdots\left(f_{L, P_{2}}^{\left(N_{2}\right)}\right)^{\beta_{N_{2}}}
$$

where the $f_{L, P_{i}}^{(l)}$ are irreducible for all $i \in\{1,2\}$ and $l \in \mathbb{N}$. If $N_{1}=N_{2}$ we are done, so without loss of generality assume that $N_{1} \leq N_{2}$. Then, by (3.5) we have

$$
\left(f_{L, P_{1}}^{(1)}\left(\mathbf{y}_{0}\right)\right)^{\alpha_{1}} \cdots\left(f_{L, P_{1}}^{\left(N_{1}\right)}\left(\mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}\right)\right)^{\alpha_{N_{1}}}=\left(f_{L, P_{2}}^{(1)}\left(T \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}+n\right)\right)^{\beta_{1}} \cdots\left(f_{L, P_{2}}^{\left(N_{2}\right)}\left(T \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{0}}+n\right)\right)^{\beta_{N_{2}}}
$$

and since $f_{L, P_{2}}^{(i)}\left(T \mathbf{y}_{0}+n\right)$ is irreducible for all $1 \leq i \leq N_{2}$, we have $N_{1}=N_{2}$.

When restricting a polynomial to an affine linear variety, we will only be interested in the number of irreducible factors. The theorem above shows that this number does not change for the choice of parametrization, and thus we will write $f_{L}$ instead of $f_{L, P}$. This allows us to make the following definitions:

Definition. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta>0$ and let $L \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be a linear affine variety with $\operatorname{dim} L=2$. Further denote by $f_{L}$ be the restriction of $f$ to $L$.

- $M_{T}^{(2)}$ is the set of all linear affine varieties of dimension 2.
- As a subset of $M_{T}^{(2)}$, we denote by $M^{(2)}$ the set of all planes with the parametrization

$$
M^{(2)}=\left\{\left.\left(\begin{array}{c}
X_{1}  \tag{3.6}\\
X_{2} \\
\vdots \\
X_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n} \right\rvert\, \exists X, Y \in \mathbb{F}_{q} \text { with }\left(\begin{array}{c}
v_{1} \\
v_{2} \\
\vdots \\
v_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t}+\left(\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\omega_{2} \\
\vdots \\
\omega_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t} X+\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
\eta_{2} \\
\vdots \\
\eta_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t} Y=\left(\begin{array}{c}
X_{1} \\
X_{2} \\
\vdots \\
X_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t}\right\}
$$

where $v_{1}, v_{j}, \omega_{j}, \eta_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$ for all $j \in\{2, \ldots, n\}$ and $\left(\eta_{2}, \ldots, \eta_{n}\right) \neq \mathbf{0}$.

- $E$ is the number of planes through a given point and $E^{(2)}$ is the number of planes through two given distinct points.
- $v(L)$ is the number of the absolutely irreducible factors of $f_{L}$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$.
- For $j \in\{0, \ldots, n\}$, we define $\Pi_{j}$ as the set of planes $L \in M^{(2)}$ such that $|v(L)-1|=j$.
- $\Pi_{q-1}$ is the set of planes where $f$ vanishes identically

Moreover we define

$$
A:=\left|M^{(2)}\right|, \quad B=\sum_{j=1}^{\delta-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right|, \quad C=\left|\Pi_{q-1}\right|, \quad D=\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right|-\left|M^{(2)}\right| .
$$

When we are going to make a sum over all $j$, where $j=|v(L)-1|$ is for some polynomial $f$ and some linear affine plane, and include the planes where $f$ is identically zero, then we will simply write $\sum_{j=1}^{q-1}$.

### 3.3.2 Estimates on the Restriction to Planes

Lemma 3.3.2. With the notations from the definition above, we have

$$
\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right|=\frac{q^{n}\left(q^{n}-1\right)\left(q^{n}-q\right)}{q^{2}\left(q^{2}-1\right)\left(q^{2}-q\right)}, \quad E=\frac{\left(q^{n}-1\right)\left(q^{n}-q\right)}{\left(q^{2}-1\right)\left(q^{2}-q\right)} \text { and } E^{(2)}=\frac{q^{n}-q}{q^{2}-q} \text {. }
$$

Proof. To count the elements in $M_{T}^{(2)}$, we observe that there are $q^{n}\left(q^{n}-1\right)\left(q^{n}-q\right)$ parametrizations of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{c}
X_{1} \\
X_{2} \\
\vdots \\
X_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
v_{1} \\
v_{2} \\
\vdots \\
v_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t}+\left(\begin{array}{c}
\omega_{1} \\
\omega_{2} \\
\vdots \\
\omega_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t} X+\left(\begin{array}{c}
\eta_{1} \\
\eta_{2} \\
\vdots \\
\eta_{n}
\end{array}\right)^{t} Y
$$

since the vector $\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ is arbitrary and the other two vectors have to be chosen linearly independent. Moreover for every affine linear plane $L$, there are $q^{2}\left(q^{2}-\right.$ 1) $\left(q^{2}-q\right)$ different parametrizations describing $L$. The other two equalities can be proven along the same lines.

The following theorem can be found in [21, Theorem 5]. In the theorem, $\triangle_{X}(p)$ denotes the discriminant of a polynomial $p$ with respect to $X$.
Theorem 3.3.3. Let $K$ be a field and let $f \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be absolutely irreducible. Further let $\Phi \in K\left[V_{1}, \ldots, V_{n}, W_{2}, \ldots, W_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg} \Phi \leq 2 \delta^{2}$ such that for all $\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}, \omega_{2}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right) \in$ $K^{2 n / 1}$ and

$$
\chi:=f\left(X+v_{1}, \omega_{2} X+Z_{2} Y+v_{2}, \ldots, \omega_{n} X+Z_{n} Y+v_{n}\right) \in \bar{K}\left[X, Y, Z_{2}, \ldots, Z_{n}\right]
$$

the following holds:

$$
\Phi\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}, \omega_{2}, \ldots, \omega_{n}\right) \neq\left. 0 \Rightarrow\right|_{c_{X}}(\chi) \in \bar{K} \text { and } \triangle_{X}\left(\chi\left(X, 0, Z_{2}, \ldots, Z_{n}\right) \neq 0 .\right.
$$

Then there exists a polynomial $\Psi \in \bar{K}\left[\mathbb{Z}_{2}, \ldots, Z_{n}\right] \backslash \bar{K}$ with $\operatorname{deg} \Psi \leq 3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+\delta^{2} / 2$ such that for all $\eta=\left(\eta_{2}, \ldots, \eta_{n}\right) \in \bar{K}^{n-1}$ with $\Psi(\eta) \neq 0$ the polynomial $\chi\left(X, Y, \eta_{2}, \ldots, \eta_{n}\right)$ is absolutely irreducible.

We use the existence of such an $\Phi$ as above, which is also proved in [21], to deduce the following corollary.
Corollary 3.3.4. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be absolutely irreducible with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta>0$. Then there are at most $\left(3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+5 \delta^{2} / 2\right) \frac{q^{3 n-3}}{q^{3}(q-1)}$ planes $L \in M^{(2)}$ such that $f_{L}$ is not absolutely irreducible.

Proof. With the notations from Theorem 3.3.3, we set $K=\mathbb{F}_{q}$ and define the polynomial

$$
\Xi:=\Phi\left(V_{1}, \ldots, V_{n}, W_{2}, \ldots, W_{n}\right) \Psi\left(Z_{2}, \ldots, Z_{n}\right) \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}\left[V_{1}, \ldots, V_{n}, W_{2}, \ldots, W_{n}, Z_{2}, \ldots, Z_{n}\right] .
$$

For any $(\nu, \omega, \eta) \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}^{3 n-2}$ with $\Xi(\nu, \omega, \eta) \neq 0$, the polynomial $\chi(X, Y, \eta)$ is absolutely irreducible. So the only possible candidates for $L \in M^{(2)}$ such that $f_{L}$ is not absolutely irreducible are those, for which $f_{L}=\chi(X, Y, \eta)$ is not absolutely irreducible and therefore $\Xi(v, \omega, \eta)=0$. As $\Xi$ defines a hypersurface of dimension $3 n-3$ and of degree less or equal than ( $3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+5 \delta^{2} / 2$ ), by Lemma 3.1.5, there are at most $\left(3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+5 \delta^{2} / 2\right)\left(q^{3 n-3}\right)$ different parametrizations of the form 3.6 describing a suitable plane $L \in M^{(2)}$. Since there are $q^{3}(q-1)$ equivalent parametrizations for every plane, we are done.

Assume now that we have given an absolutely irreducible polynomial $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta=2$. Then it follows from the corollary above, that

$$
\begin{equation*}
B=\sum_{j=1}^{\delta-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right|=\left|\Pi_{1}\right| \leq\left(3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+5 \delta^{2} / 2\right) \frac{q^{3 n-6}}{(q-1)} . \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is a special case of the following proposition, which is proved in [5, Proposition 4.1].

Proposition 3.3.5. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be a polynomial of degree $\delta>1$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
B \leq\left(2 \delta^{13 / 3}+3 \delta^{11 / 3}\right) \frac{q^{3 n-3}}{q^{3}(q-1)} . \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The estimates of the following lemma are crucial for the proof of Theorem 3.3.8.
Lemma 3.3.6. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta>0$ and let $L \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be an $\mathbb{F}_{q^{-}}$ plane. Further suppose that $f$ is not equivalent to a polynomial in $\mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n-2}\right]$. Then the following inequalities hold:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{B}{A} \leq\left(2 \delta^{13 / 3}+3 \delta^{11 / 3}\right) \frac{q^{n-2}}{q^{n-1}-1}  \tag{3.9}\\
& \frac{C}{A} \leq \frac{\delta^{2}}{q^{2}}  \tag{3.10}\\
& \frac{D}{A} \leq \frac{4}{3 q^{2}}  \tag{3.11}\\
& \frac{A}{E} \leq q^{n-2} \tag{3.12}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. For the first inequality, let $L$ be a linear affine variety of dimension 2 which omits to a parametrization as in (3.6). Then there are $q^{3}(q-1)$ equivalent parametrizations for $L$. Moreover, there are $q^{n} q^{n-1}\left(q^{n-1}-1\right)=q^{2 n-1}\left(q^{n-1}-1\right)$ different possible parametrizations, thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\frac{q^{2 n-1}\left(q^{n-1}-1\right)}{q^{3}(q-1)} \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

With Proposition 3.3.5, it follows that

$$
\frac{1}{\left(2 \delta^{13 / 3}+3 \delta^{11 / 3}\right)} \frac{B}{A} \leq \frac{q^{3 n-3}}{q^{3}(q-1)} \frac{q^{3}(q-1)}{q^{2 n-1}\left(q^{n-1}-1\right)}=\frac{q^{n-2}}{q^{n-1}-1}
$$

and thus (3.9) follows. With (3.13), equation (3.12) follows directly by Lemma 3.3.2. To obtain an upper bound for $C / A$, consider a plane $L \in M^{(2)}$. After a linear change of coordinates, we may assume that $L$ is of the form $X_{1}=\ldots=X_{n-2}=0$. The plane $L$ has $q^{n-2}$ parallels of the form $X_{1}=c_{1}, \ldots, X_{n-2}=c_{n-2}$ with $c_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n-2$. We can write $f$ as

$$
f=\sum_{i, j} p_{i, j}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n-2}\right) X_{n-1}^{i} X_{n}^{j}
$$

for some finite index set $I \subset \mathbb{N}$ and polynomials $p_{i, j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n-2}\right]$. Assume that $L^{\prime}$ is a plane parallel to $L$ given by $X_{1}=c_{1}, \ldots, X_{n-2}=c_{n-2}$ such that $f_{L}$ vanishes on $L^{\prime}$. This means that $p_{i, j}\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n-2}\right)=0$ for all $i, j \in I$. Assume that the $p_{i, j}$ have some common nontrivial factor $h$. Then $f=h \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n-2}\right]$ since $f$ is absolutely irreducible, contradicting our assumptions. Therefore by Lemma 3.1.6, and by the fact that the degree of every $p_{i, j}$ is bounded from above by $\delta$, there are at most $\delta^{2} q^{n-2}$ tuples $\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n-2}\right)$ such that $p_{i, j}\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n-2}\right)=0$ for all $p_{i, j}$. But this means that there are at most $\delta^{2} q^{n-2}$ parallels $L^{\prime}$ to $L$ such that $f_{L^{\prime}}=0$. Next, for $L \in M_{(2)}$ let $[L]_{P}$ be the
equivalence class $\left\{K \in M_{(2)} \mid \mathrm{L}\right.$ is parallel to $\left.K\right\}$ and let $D$ be the number of equivalence classes. Then

$$
\frac{C}{A} \leq \frac{\delta^{2} q^{n-4} D}{q^{n-2} D}=\frac{\delta^{2}}{q^{2}} .
$$

For equation (3.11) we use the fact $D=\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right|-A$ and thus have

$$
\frac{D}{A}=\frac{1}{A} \frac{q^{n}\left(q^{n-1}-1\right)\left(q^{n-1}-q\right)}{q^{2}\left(q^{2}-1\right)\left(q^{2}-q\right)} \leq \frac{4}{3 q^{2}}
$$

Let $f$ be a polynomial in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[X, Y]$ of degree $\delta$. In the following we will set $\omega(q, \delta):=$ $(\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{1 / 2}+\delta+1$. The next lemma is from [36, lemma 5 ].
Lemma 3.3.7. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X, Y]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta$ and $v=v\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}[X, Y]\right)$. Further let $N$ be the number of zeroes of $f$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$. Then

$$
|N-v q| \leq \omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2} .
$$

Proof. For the proof set $\omega^{\prime}(q, \delta):=\omega(q, \delta)-1$. If $f$ is absolutely irreducible then we are done by Corollary 3.2.3, so assume that $f$ factors into

$$
f=c f_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} \cdots f_{v}^{\alpha_{v}} f_{v+1}^{\alpha_{v+1}} \cdots f_{k}^{\alpha_{k}},
$$

where the $f_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X, Y]$ are absolutely irreducible for $i \in\{1, \ldots, v\}, f_{j} \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}[X, Y]$ are irreducible for $j \in\{v+1, \ldots, k\}$ and $c \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$ such that every polynomial in the factorization has a coefficient equal to 1 . Let $d_{i}=\operatorname{deg} f_{i}$ for each $i \in\{1, \ldots, k\}$. Further let $V_{i}$ be the plane affine curve $V\left(f_{i}\right), V_{i, j}$ be the affine variety $V\left(f_{i}, f_{j}\right), N_{i}=\left|V_{i} \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{2}\right|$ and $N_{i, j}=\left|V_{i, j} \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{2}\right|$ for $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, k\}$. Then for $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, v\}$, we can deduce from Corollary 3.2.3 that we have

$$
\left|N_{i}-q\right|<\omega^{\prime}\left(q, d_{i}\right)
$$

and by Bezout's inequality and Lemma 3.1.5 we obtain

$$
N_{i, j} \leq d_{i} d_{j} .
$$

Let $j \in\{v+1, \ldots, k\}$. As $f_{j} \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}[X, Y]$, there are some $\xi_{j, 1,1}, \ldots, \xi_{j, m} \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}_{q}$ such that $f_{j} \in\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\left[\xi_{j, 1}, \ldots, \xi_{j, m}\right]\right)[X, Y]$ and $1, \xi_{j, 1}, \ldots, \xi_{j, m}$ are linearly independent. Moreover, since $f_{j}$ contains a term with coefficient 1 , we can write it as

$$
f_{j}=f_{j, 0}+\xi_{j, 1} f_{j, 1}+\cdots+\xi_{j, m} f_{j, m},
$$

where $f_{j, 0} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}[X, Y]$ and $m \geq 1$. By the irreducibility of $f_{j}$, the $f_{j, r}$ are coprime for $r \in\{0, \ldots, m\}$ and therefore by Lemma 3.1.6 we have

$$
N_{j} \leq d_{j}^{2} .
$$

With the identity $\sum_{i} \omega^{\prime}\left(q, \delta_{i}\right) \leq \omega^{\prime}\left(q, \sum_{i} \delta_{i}\right)$ we have

$$
N \geq \sum_{i=1}^{v} N_{i}-\sum_{\substack{i, j=1 \\ i \neq j}}^{v} N_{i, j} \geq v q-\sum_{i=1}^{v} \omega^{\prime}\left(q, d_{i}\right)-\sum_{\substack{i, j=1 \\ i \neq j}}^{v} d_{i} d_{j}>v q-\omega^{\prime}(q, \delta)-\delta^{2} .
$$

On the other hand we obtain

$$
N \leq \sum_{i=1}^{v} N_{i}+\sum_{i=v+1}^{k} N_{i} \leq v q+\sum_{i=1}^{v} \omega^{\prime}\left(q, d_{i}\right)+\sum_{i=v+1}^{k} d_{i}^{2}<v q+\omega^{\prime}(q, \delta)+\delta^{2},
$$

so we have

$$
-\omega^{\prime}(q, \delta)-\delta^{2}<N-v q \leq \omega^{\prime}(q, \delta)+\delta^{2} .
$$

We are now able to show the following theorem, which is the general version of Theorem 3.3.11, since no restrictions on the size of the finite field are given.

Theorem 3.3.8. Let $H \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be a hypersurface of degree $\delta$ and let $N=\left|H \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right|$. Then

$$
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| \leq(\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+5 \delta^{13 / 3} q^{n-2} .
$$

Proof. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be the defining polynomial of $H$, and assume that $f$ is not equivalent to a polynomial in $n-2$ variables. First assume that $\delta=1$. By the definition of a hypersurface, $N$ is the number of zeroes of $f$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$, and since the degree of the hypersurface equals the degree of $f$, the polynomial has total degree 1 and thus $N=q^{n-1}$. So we only need to prove the theorem for $\delta \geq 2$. By Lemma 3.3.7 it follows that

$$
\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| \leq\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-v q\right|+|v(L)-1| q \leq \omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}+j q,
$$

where $j=|v(L)-1|$. Hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{L \in M^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| & \leq \sum_{j=0}^{q-1}\left(\sum_{L \in \Pi_{j}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right|\right) \\
& \leq \sum_{j=0}^{\delta-1}\left(\sum_{L \in \Pi_{j}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right|\right)+\sum_{L \in \Pi_{q-1}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| \\
& =\left(\sum_{j=0}^{\delta-1}\left|\Pi_{j}\right|\right)\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}+j q\right)+\sum_{L \in \Pi_{q-1}}\left(q^{2}-q\right) \\
& \leq A\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}\right)+q \sum_{j=1}^{\delta-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right|+q(q-1)\left|\Pi_{q-1}\right| \\
& =A\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}\right)+B q+C q(q-1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Moreover since $\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| \leq q^{2}$ we have $\sum_{M_{T}^{(2)} \backslash M^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| \leq D q^{2}$. Further by Lemma 3.3.2 we can write $q^{n-1}=q\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right| / E=(1 / E) \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}} q$. For the case $\delta \geq 3$ and
with Lemma 3.3.6 we conclude that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| & =\frac{1}{E}\left(\sum_{L \in M^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right|+\sum_{M_{T}^{(2)} \backslash M^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right|\right) \\
& \leq \frac{1}{E}\left(A\left(\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}\right)+B q+C q(q-1)+D q^{2}\right)\right. \\
& =\frac{A}{E}\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}+\frac{B}{A} q+\frac{C}{A} q(q-1)+\frac{D}{A} q^{2}\right) \\
& \leq q^{n-2}\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}+\left(2 \delta^{13 / 3}+3 \delta^{11 / 3}\right) \frac{4}{3}+\delta^{2}+\frac{4}{3}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since we have $5 \delta^{13 / 3} \geq \delta+1+2 \delta^{2}+4 / 3+\left(2 \delta^{13 / 3}+3 \delta^{11 / 3}\right)(4 / 3)$ for $\delta \geq 3$, we are done. For the case $\delta=2$ we use the inequality

$$
\frac{B}{A} q \leq\left(3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+5 \delta^{2} / 2\right) \frac{4}{3}
$$

which is a consequence of (3.7). With this inequality we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| & \leq q^{n-2}\left(\omega(q, \delta)+\delta^{2}+\left(3 \delta^{4} / 2-2 \delta^{3}+5 \delta^{2} / 2\right) \frac{4}{3}+\delta^{2}+\frac{4}{3}\right) \\
& \leq(\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+\left(2 \delta^{4}+3 \delta\right) q^{n-2} \\
& \leq(\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+5 \delta^{13 / 3} q^{n-2}
\end{aligned}
$$

We still have to treat the case where $f$ is equivalent to a polynomial in $n-2$ variables. We will do this by induction on $n$. For $n=1$ and $n=2$ there is nothing to show since $f$ can not have only $n-2$ variables, and the theorem is true by the arguments above. Therefore assume that $n>2$, and that $f$ is equivalent to a polynomial $g$ in $n-2$ variables. If we denote the number of zeroes of $g$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n-2}$ by $N^{\prime}$, then $N=N^{\prime} q^{2}$, so by the induction hypothesis we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| & =\left|q^{2} N^{\prime}-q^{2} q^{n-3}\right|=q^{2}\left|N^{\prime}-q^{n-3}\right| \\
& \leq q^{2}\left((\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{n-7 / 2}+5 \delta^{13 / 3} q^{n-4}\right) \\
& \leq(\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+5 \delta^{13 / 3} q^{n-2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 3.3.3 Improved Estimate with a Condition on the Field

With two more lemmas, we can improve the estimate given in the previous theorem, by assuming a lower bound on the number of elements in the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$. The first lemma is from [36, lemma 6].
Lemma 3.3.9. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta, N$ be the number of zeroes of $f$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ and $L \subset \mathbb{A}^{n}$ be a linear affine variety of dimension 2 . Then

$$
\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)-N q^{2-n}\right)^{2} \leq \delta E q^{n-1} .
$$

Proof. We have

$$
\sum_{\substack{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}} N\left(f_{L}\right)=\sum_{\substack{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n} \\ f(\mathbf{x})=0}} \sum_{\substack{L \in M_{T}^{(2)} \\ \mathbf{x} \in L}} 1=\sum_{\substack{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{F}_{\eta}^{n} \\ f(\mathbf{x})=0}} E=N E
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\substack{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)\right)^{2} & =\sum_{\substack{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{F}_{=}^{n} \\
f(\mathbf{x})=0}} \sum_{\substack{\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{F}_{n}^{n}(\mathbf{y})=0}} \sum_{\substack{x, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{F}_{\eta}^{n} \\
x, y \in L}} 1=\sum_{\substack{x, y \in \mathbb{F}_{n}^{n} \\
f(\mathbf{y})=f(\mathbf{x})=0 \\
\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{y}}} E^{(2)}+\sum_{\substack{x, y \in \mathbb{F}_{n}^{n} \\
x, y \in L}} E \\
& =N(N-1) E^{(2)}+N E \leq N^{2} E^{(2)}+N E .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)-N q^{2-n}\right)^{2} & =\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)\right)^{2}+2 N q^{2-n} \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}} N\left(f_{L}\right)-N^{2} q^{2(2-n)} \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}} 1 \\
& =\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)\right)^{2}+2 N^{2} q^{2-n} E-N^{2} q^{2(2-n)}\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

By Lemma 3.3.2 we have $q^{2-n}=E /\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right|$. Moreover we have $\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right| E^{(2)}<E^{2}$ and thus

$$
\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)\right)^{2}+2 N^{2} q^{2-n} E-N^{2} q^{2(2-n)}\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right| \leq N^{2} E^{(2)}+N E-N^{2} \frac{E^{2}}{\left|M_{T}^{(2)}\right|} \leq N E .
$$

Since $N \leq \delta q^{n-1}$ by Lemma 3.1.5, it follows that $N E \leq \delta E q^{n-1}$, which finished the proof.

Lemma 3.3.10. Let $q>15 \delta^{\frac{13}{3}}$ and let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta$. Then

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{q-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right| \leq 4 \delta E q^{n-3} .
$$

Proof. First note that by Lemma 3.3.7 we have

$$
\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right|=\mid(q-v(L) q)-\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)-v(L) q \mid \geq j p-\omega(q, \delta)-\delta^{2}\right.
$$

and thus with Theorem 3.3 .8 we deduce

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-N q^{2-n}\right| & \geq\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right|-2^{q-2}\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| \\
& \geq j p-\omega(q, \delta)-\delta^{2}-\omega(q, \delta)-5 \delta^{13 / 3} \geq \frac{1}{2} j q,
\end{aligned}
$$

where the last inequality holds since $q>15 \delta^{\frac{13}{3}}$. Therefore, with the previous lemma we have

$$
\frac{q^{2}}{4} \sum_{j=1}^{q-1} j^{2}\left|\Pi_{j}\right|=\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(\frac{1}{2} j q\right)^{2} \leq \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left(N\left(f_{L}\right)-N q^{2-n}\right)^{2} \leq \delta E q^{n-1}
$$

and thus $\sum_{j=1}^{q-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right| \leq 4 \delta E q^{n-3}$.

Now we are able to prove the following theorem:
Theorem 3.3.11. Let $q>15 \delta^{\frac{13}{3}}$ and let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be absolutely irreducible with $\operatorname{deg} f=\delta$. Further let $N$ be the number of zeroes of $f$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$. Then

$$
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| \leq(\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+\left(5 \delta^{2}+\delta+1\right) q^{n-2} .
$$

Proof. We can assume that $f$ is not equivalent to a polynomial in $n-2$ variables, since the case where it is equivalent to such a polynomial can be treated analogously as in the proof of Theorem 3.3.8. Moreover note that for the case $\delta=1$ we have $N=q^{n-1}$ and the inequality holds, so we can assume that $\delta \geq 2$. Similar to the proof of Theorem 3.3.8 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| & \leq \sum_{j=0}^{\delta-1}\left(\sum_{L \in \Pi_{j}}\left(\omega\left(q, \delta+\delta^{2}+j q\right)\right)+\sum_{L \in \Pi_{q-1}}\left(q^{2}-q\right)\right. \\
& \leq\left(\sum_{j=0}^{\delta-1}\left|\Pi_{j}\right|\right)\left(\omega\left(q, \delta+\delta^{2}\right)+q \sum_{j=0}^{\delta-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right|+q(q-1)\left|\Pi_{q-1}\right|\right. \\
& \leq(A+D)\left(\omega\left(q, \delta+\delta^{2}\right)+2 q \sum_{j=0}^{q-1} j\left|\Pi_{j}\right|\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus by Lemma 3.3.10 it follows that

$$
\sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| \leq(A+D)\left(\omega\left(q, \delta+\delta^{2}\right)+8 \delta E q^{n-2} .\right.
$$

Therefore we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| & =\left|\frac{1}{E} \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}} N\left(f_{L}\right)-\frac{1}{E} \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}} q\right| \leq \frac{1}{E} \sum_{L \in M_{T}^{(2)}}\left|N\left(f_{L}\right)-q\right| \\
& \leq \frac{1}{E}\left((A+D)\left(\omega\left(q, \delta+\delta^{2}\right)+8 \delta E q^{n-2}\right)\right. \\
& \leq q^{n-2}\left((\delta-1)(\delta-2) q^{1 / 2}+5 \delta^{2}+\delta+1\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 3.4 A Family of Collision-Free Functions

In order to construct a Diophantine Equation over a finite field which is hard to solve, as we need to do in 5.3 , we are going to prove the following theorem, as given in [3], by Bérczes, Folláth and Pethő.

Theorem 3.4.1. Let $\gamma \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, A, B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ homogeneous with $\operatorname{deg} A<\operatorname{deg} B=D$ and $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} B=D$ for all $i \in\{1 \ldots, n\}$. Further suppose that there are $k, l \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ with $k<l$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
B\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{k}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{l}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{k}, X_{l}\right] \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

has no multiple zeroes. Set $F:=A+B$ and let $P_{\text {coll }}(F, \gamma)$ be the probability that $F(\mathbf{x})=\gamma$, where $\mathbf{x}$ is chosen uniformly at random from $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$. If $q>5 D^{13 / 3}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{\text {coll }}(F, \gamma) \leq \frac{3}{q} \text {. } \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, $F+\gamma$ is absolutely irreducible over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$.
We will use Theorem 3.3.11 to establish the bound of the collision probability $P_{\text {coll }}$. We only need to show that a polynomial $F+\gamma$ as given above is absolutely irreducible.

Lemma 3.4.2. Let $K$ be a field with algebraic closure $\bar{K}$. Further let $A, B \in K[X]$ such that $B$ has no multiple zeroes in $\bar{K}$ and $\operatorname{deg} A \neq \operatorname{deg} B \geq 1$. For some $n \geq 4$ we define

$$
G:=Y^{n}+A Y^{n-1}+B \in K[X, Y] .
$$

Then $G$ is absolutely irreducible.
Proof. For the sake of a contradiction assume that $G$ is reducible, i.e. there are $U, V \in$ $\bar{K}[X, Y]$ with $G=U V$. Then $U$ and $V$ are of the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
& U=Y^{k}+a_{k-1} Y^{k-1}+\cdots+a_{1} Y+a_{0} \\
& V=Y^{n-k}+b_{n-k-1} Y^{n-k-1}+\cdots+b_{1} Y+b_{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

with polynomials $a_{i}, b_{j}$ such that

$$
a_{i} \in\left\{\begin{array} { l } 
{ \overline { K } [ X ] \quad : 0 \leq i \leq k - 1 } \\
{ \{ 1 \} } \\
{ \{ 0 \} }
\end{array} \quad : k + 1 \leq i \leq n - 2 \text { : } \quad \text { and } b _ { j } \in \left\{\begin{array}{lr}
\bar{K}[X] \quad: 0 \leq j \leq n-k-1 \\
\{1\} & : j=n-k \\
\{0\} \quad: n-k+1 \leq j \leq n-2 .
\end{array}\right.\right.
$$

We first assume that $\min \{k, n-k\} \geq 2$. With $U, V, a_{i}$ and $b_{j}$ defined as above, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
G=U V=\sum_{i=0}^{n} c_{i} Y_{i} \text { with } c_{i}=\sum_{j=0}^{i} a_{j} b_{i-j} . \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

By equating coefficients we see that $a_{0} b_{0}=B$, so we can assume without loss of generality that $\operatorname{deg} a_{0} \geq 1$. Since $\bar{K}$ is algebraically closed, we choose some $\alpha \in \bar{K}$ with $a_{0}(\alpha)=0$. By assumption $B$ has no multiple root, therefore $b_{0}(\alpha) \neq 0$. By a simple inductive argument, it follows that $a_{i}(\alpha)=0$ for all $i \neq k$. Thus $U(\alpha, Y)=Y_{K}$. We have $\min \{k, n-k\} \geq 2$ and thus $n-k-2 \geq 0$, so we can write

$$
\begin{aligned}
Y^{n}+A(\alpha) Y^{n-1}+B(\alpha) & =G(\alpha, Y)=U(\alpha, Y) V(\alpha, Y) \\
& =Y^{n}+b_{n-1}(\alpha) Y^{n-1}+\cdots+b_{1}(\alpha) Y+b_{0}(\alpha)
\end{aligned}
$$

This is a contradiction since $0=B(\alpha) \neq b_{0}(\alpha)$.
Assume now that $\min \{k, n-k\}=1$, and without loss of generality that $k=1$. Then $U=Y+a_{0}$ and $V=Y^{n-1}+b_{n-2} Y^{n-2}+\cdots+b_{1} Y+b_{0}$. By (3.16) we obtain $B=a_{0} b_{0}$ and $a_{0} b_{i}=-b_{i-1}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n-2\}$. This means that $a_{0}^{2} \mid B$, and since $B$ has no multiple
roots, $a_{0} \in \bar{K}$. Moreover, from $a_{0} b_{i}=-b_{i-1}$ it follows that $b_{n-k-2}=\left(-a_{0}\right)^{k} b_{n}-2$ for all $k \in\{1, \ldots, n-2\}$, thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
Y^{n}+A Y^{n-1}+B & =G=U V \\
& =Y^{n}+\left(a_{0}+b_{n-2}\right) Y^{n-1}+a_{0}\left(-a_{0}\right)^{n-2} b_{n-2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

But this means that $\operatorname{deg} A=\operatorname{deg} B$, which is a contradiction.
Lemma 3.4.3. Let $K$ be a field, $\gamma \in K, A, B \in K\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ homogeneous with $\operatorname{deg} A<$ $\operatorname{deg} B=D$ and $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} B=D$ for all $i \in\{1 \ldots, n\}$. Further suppose that there are $k, l \in$ $\{1, \ldots, n\}$ with $k<l$ and

$$
B\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{k}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{l}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \in K\left[X_{k}, X_{l}\right]
$$

has no multiple zeroes. Set $F:=A+B$. Then the polynomial $F+\gamma$ is absolutely irreducible.
Proof. Assume that the polynomial $g:=F+\gamma$ is reducible, i.e. there are $U, V \in$ $\bar{K}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that $g=U V$ and $\operatorname{deg} U, \operatorname{deg} V \geq 1$. Fix some indices $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that

$$
B_{0}:=B\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{k}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{l}, 0, \ldots, 0\right)
$$

has no multiple roots and set

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{0} & =A\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{i}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{j}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \\
U_{0} & =U\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{i}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{j}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \\
V_{0} & =V\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{i}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{j}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \\
F_{0} & =A_{0}+B_{0} \text { and } g_{0}=F_{0}+\gamma .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\operatorname{deg} U \geq 1$ there is some $k \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{k}} U \geq 1$. Since $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{s}} B=D$ for all $s$ and $\operatorname{deg} A<\operatorname{deg} B \operatorname{deg}_{X_{s}} g=D$. Moreover, since $g-\gamma$ is homogeneous, we have $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{s}} V<n$ and $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{s}} U>0$. By repeating this argument, we can deduce that $1 \leq \operatorname{deg}_{X_{s}} U, \operatorname{deg}_{X_{s}} V \leq D-1$ for all $s \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. This means that $g_{0}=U_{0} V_{0}$ is a nontrivial factorization of $g_{0}$. With $r=\operatorname{deg} X_{j} A_{0}$ we can write $g_{0}$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
g_{0} & =B_{0}+A_{0}+\gamma \\
& =X_{j}^{D}\left(B_{0}\left(\frac{X_{i}}{X_{j}^{\prime}}, 1\right)+\frac{1}{X_{j}^{D-r}} A_{0}\left(\frac{X_{i}}{X_{j}}, 1\right)+\gamma \frac{1}{X_{j}^{D}}\right) \\
& =\gamma X_{j}^{D}\left(b+a Y^{D-r}+Y^{D}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
X:=\frac{X_{i}}{X_{j}}, Y:=\frac{1}{X_{j}}, a=\frac{1}{\gamma} A_{0}(X, 1) \text { and } b=\frac{1}{\gamma} B_{0}(X, 1) .
$$

Since $g_{0}=U_{0} V_{0}$, we set $K_{1}=\operatorname{deg}_{X_{j}} U_{0}, K_{2}=\operatorname{deg}_{X_{j}} V_{0}$ and obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
g_{0} & =\gamma X_{j}^{K_{1}} X_{j}^{K_{2}}\left(\frac{1}{\gamma X_{j}^{K_{1}}} U_{0}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\gamma X_{j}^{K_{2}}} V_{0}\right) \\
& =\gamma X_{j}^{D} U_{0}^{\prime}(X, Y) V_{0}^{\prime}(X, Y)
\end{aligned}
$$

for some nontrivial polynomials $U_{0}^{\prime}$ and $V_{0}^{\prime}$. But this gives a factorization of $b+a Y^{D-r}+$ $Y^{D}$, which is absolutely irreducible by Lemma 3.4.2.

Proof of Theorem 3.4.1. Assume that we have given $f=A+B+\gamma \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ as in the theorem. Then by Lemma 3.4.3, $f$ is absolutely irreducible. By Theorem 3.3.11, we have

$$
\left|N-q^{n-1}\right| \leq(D-1)(D-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+\left(5 D^{2}+D+1\right) q^{n-2}
$$

where $N$ denotes the number of zeroes of $f$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$. Thus

$$
|N| \leq q^{n-1}+(D-1)(D-2) q^{n-3 / 2}+\left(5 D^{2}+D+1\right) q^{n-2} .
$$

As the collision of $F=A+B$ with $\gamma$ equals a root of $f$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{\text {coll }}(F, \gamma) & =\frac{|N|}{\left|\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\right|} \leq \frac{1}{q}+\frac{(D-1)(D-2)}{q^{3 / 2}}+\frac{\left(5 D^{2}+D+1\right)}{q^{2}} \\
& \leq \frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{q} \underbrace{\left(\frac{(D-1)(D-2)}{q^{1 / 2}}\right)}_{<1}+\frac{1}{q} \underbrace{\left(\frac{\left(5 D^{2}+D+1\right)}{q}\right)}_{<1}<\frac{3}{q} .
\end{aligned}
$$

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

The proof that Hilbert's Tenth Problem has not solution means that there is no single algorithm taking any Diophantine equation as input and solving it. This does not mean that all Diophantine equations are hard to solve. On the contrary, most equations with a single variable or zero-dimensional systems of Diophantine equations can be solved efficiently. However, in spite of great efforts, there are many Diophantine equations for which there is no known method of solving them in polynomial time or even better. This fact is a reason for studying the use of Diophantine equations in the construction of public key cryptosystems.

Kerkhoff's principle for designing a cryptographic protocol states that an adversary, who tries to break a protocol, has knowledge of everything except for the private keys, i.e. the exact execution of a protocol is known. In order for a public key system to work, a message encrypted by the public key has to be linked to the private key in a way to decrypt the message. However, the public key can not give away any information of the private key, even with the knowledge of how the private key was chosen. This idea is realized through so called one-way-functions.

Definition. A function $f: X \mapsto Y$ is called a one-way function, if for all $x \in X f(x)=y$ can be computed in polynomial time, but for any probabilistic polynomial time algorithm $A$, we have

$$
\operatorname{Pr}\left[A\left(f\left(X_{n}\right)\right) \in f^{-1}\left(f\left(X_{n}\right)\right)\right]<n^{-\omega(1)}
$$

where $X_{n}$ denotes the uniform distribution over $X^{n}$.
Informally this means that $f$ is easy to compute, but there is no efficient way of computing the inverse $f^{-1}$. Although it is believed that one-way functions exist, e.g. simple multiplication, it is a fact yet to be proved. A trapdoor function is a special case of a one-way function, where additional information on the function $f$ ensures the computation of the inverse of $f$ in polynomial time. To use a trapdoor function $f$ in a public key cryptosystem, assume that $p$ is the private key only known to the participant Alice. Alice uses the private key to compute the inverse $f^{-1}(m)$ for some message $m$, which she can do in a short amount of time assuming that $p$ is the additional information required to invert a trapdoor function.
The hardness of solving certain Diophantine equations offers a chance of constructing possible candidates for trapdoor functions. For example, in section 4.2 we note that the problem of finding a non-negative solution to the equation

$$
X_{1} s_{1}+\cdots+X_{n} s_{n}=C
$$

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

is NP complete. The coefficients of this equation form the public key of a cryptosystem, and since it was constructed from the private key in a way that the solution of the equation for the holder of the private key is easy, this forms a trapdoor function based on Diophantine equations.

### 4.1 Ong-Schnorr-Shamir Signature Scheme

The Ong-Schnorr-Shamir cryptosystem for obtaining signatures was first proposed in 1984, [33]. It is a fairly simple protocol, which can be implemented and executed rather efficiently. Part of the security is based on the assumption that finding a single solution to a quadratic Diophantine equation over the ring $\mathbb{Z}_{n}$ is difficult. However, this assumption turned out to be false.

### 4.1.1 The Protocol

Assume that Alice wants to sign a message $M \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}$ where $n$ is chosen arbitrarily. The signature scheme follows the subsequent protocol:

## Ong-Schnorr-Shamir signature scheme

Key generation Alice chooses two large primes $p$ and $q$ and sets $n=p q$. Further she chooses some $u \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}^{*}$, publishes $n$ and $k:=-u^{-2} \bmod n$ while keeping $u$ secret.
Signature generation Given a message $M \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}$, Alice selects a random $X_{1} \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}^{*}$ and sets $X_{2}:=M X_{1}^{-1}$. Further she computes

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S_{1}:=\left(X_{2}+X_{1}\right) / 2, \\
& S_{2}:=\left(X_{2}-X_{1}\right) u / 2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

The pair $\left(S_{1}, S_{2}\right)$ acts as a signature for $M$.
Signature verification To verify that $\left(S_{1}, S_{2}\right)$ is a signature for $M$, Bob checks whether

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{1}^{2}+k S_{2}^{2} \equiv M \quad \bmod n \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

To verify that a signature given by Alice indeed fulfills (4.1), we note that $X_{1} X_{2}=M$, and thus

$$
S_{1}^{2}+k S_{2}^{2} \equiv\left(X_{2}+X_{1}\right)^{2} / 4-u^{-2}\left(X_{2}-X_{1}\right)^{2} u^{2} / 4 \equiv X_{1} X_{2} \equiv M \quad \bmod n .
$$

Note that as in other signature schemes, there is no one-to-one correspondence between signatures ( $S_{1}, S_{2}$ ) and messages $M$, since there are $n^{2}$ possible pairs ( $S_{1}, S_{2}$ ) and only $n$ possible messages $M \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}$.

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

### 4.1.2 Cryptoanalysis of the Scheme

It can be shown that from the data given by the public key, the scheme cannot be broken by finding the private key, assuming that the factorization of $n$ is a one-way function.

Proposition 4.1.1. Finding the secret key $u^{-1}$ is at least as hard as factoring $n$.
Proof. Assume that we have given $n$ and an algorithm to efficiently compute the secret key with the knowledge of the public key. Pick some $u \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}^{*}$ uniformly at random, and compute $k \equiv-u^{-2} \bmod n$. Since $(n, k)$ forms a public key for the signature scheme, we can compute $u^{\prime} \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}^{*}$ such that $-\left(u^{\prime}\right)^{-2} \equiv k \bmod n$. The equations $x^{2} \equiv k$ $\bmod p$ and $x^{2} \equiv k \bmod q$ both have two solutions, thus it is easy to show using the Chinese Remainder Theorem that $x^{2} \equiv k \bmod n$ has exactly four solutions $x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}, x_{4}$, where the probability that $x_{i} \equiv \pm x_{j}$ is $\frac{1}{2}$ for $i, j \in\{1,2,3,4\}$. Therefore $u \not \equiv \pm u^{\prime}$ with probability $\frac{1}{2}$. Since

$$
-\left(u^{\prime}\right)^{-2} \equiv-u^{-2} \Leftrightarrow\left(u^{\prime}-u\right)\left(u^{\prime}+u\right) \equiv 0 \quad \bmod n,
$$

and $n$ has only two prime factors, after choosing $m$ different $u \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}^{*}$, we can indeed factorize $n$ with probability $1-\frac{1}{2^{m}}$.

So the security of the Ong-Schnorr-Shamir signature scheme relies on the difficulty of solving the quadratic Diophantine equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{2}+k y^{2}-m \equiv 0 \quad \bmod n \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

over $\mathbb{Z}$ for given $m$ and $k$. However, Pollard [34] found a way of solving this equation efficiently using a probabilistic algorithm. His main idea was the reduction of the above equation to one with a smaller $k$ and a new $m$. By iterating this process, an equation of the form $x^{2} \pm y^{2} \equiv m \bmod n$ has to be solved, which can be done efficiently. This breaks the protocol, even with the given difficulty of finding the private key. The outline of the algorithm given by Pollard given in [34] is as follows:

1. If $n=p^{k}$ for some prime $p$, then solve (4.2) by computing square roots in $\mathbb{Z}_{n}^{*}$.
2. Replace $m$ by a smaller $m^{\prime}$ such that $-k$ is a quadratic residuo modulo $m_{0}$, and where $0<m^{\prime} \leq \sqrt{4|k| / 3}$ if $k>0$ and $0<\left|m^{\prime}\right| \leq \sqrt{|k|}$ otherwise.
3. If $m^{\prime}$ is a perfect square, or $m^{\prime}=k$, solve $x^{2}+k y^{2} \equiv m^{\prime} \bmod n$ with $y=0$ or $x=0$, go to step 5 .
4. Apply the steps above recursively to solve $\left(x^{\prime}\right)^{2}-m^{\prime}\left(y^{\prime}\right)^{2} \equiv-k \bmod n$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(y^{\prime}, n\right)=1$. Solve $x^{2}+k y^{2}=m^{\prime} \bmod n$ with $x:=x^{\prime}\left(y^{\prime}\right)^{-1} \bmod n$, $y:=\left(y^{\prime}\right)^{-1} \bmod n$.
5. Solve the recursive steps in 2-4 to obtain a solution to (4.2).

The time complexity of Pollard's algorithm is given $\mathcal{O}\left((\log n)^{2} \log \log |k|\right)$, so a signature can be forged very efficiently. A first attempt of repairing the OSS scheme tried to run the protocol not over $\mathbb{Z}_{n}$, but instead used algebraic integers and executed the protocol over

$$
\mathbb{Z}_{n, d}:=\{a+b \sqrt{d} \mid a, b \in \mathbb{Z}, 0 \leq a, b \leq n\}
$$

for some fixed $d \in \mathbb{Z}$. The idea was that Pollard's algorithm only works over an Euclidean domain, which $\mathbb{Z}_{n, d}$ is not for any $d$ with $d>73$ or $d<-11$. However, Pollard's algorithm can be extended to algebraic integers, making this approach for a signature scheme insecure.

### 4.1.3 Extensions of OSS

The OSS scheme can be extended to protocols which are similar to the one in 4.1.1, but which are not vulnerable to any known algorithm solving

$$
x^{2}-k y^{2} \equiv m \quad \bmod n .
$$

Two signature schemes of this kind are treated in [29]. The first one presented exploits the fact that when solving the equation above algorithmically, there is no control over the structure of the solution. The base of the signature scheme is to set $x:=r+\frac{m}{r}$ for some random $r \mathbb{Z}_{n}$, and publish a hash value of $x$ along with the signature.
The second signature scheme takes advantage of the fact that Pollard-like algorithms take $k$ as an input. By taking a non-polynomial function $k(x)$ instead of $k$, it is impossible for such algorithms to forge signatures.

### 4.2 Lin-Chang-Lee Cryptosystem

In [24], Lin, Chang and Lee proposed a public key cipher scheme, whose trapdoor function is based on certain Diophantine equations in $n$ variables which are believed to be difficult to solve.

### 4.2.1 The Protocol

Let $w \in \mathbb{N}$ with $w=2^{b}-1$ for some positive integer $b$. A message $M$ that is encrypted is assumed to be $n b$ bits long. Further we assume that $M$ can be broken down into $n$ sub-messages of the form $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}$.

## Lin-Chang-Lee public key cryptosystem

## Key Generation

1. Choose $n$ pairs $\left(q_{1}, k_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(q_{n}, k_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(q_{i}, q_{j}\right)=1$ for $i \neq j$, $k_{i}>w, q_{i}>k_{i} w\left(q_{i} \bmod k_{i}\right)$ and $q_{i} \not \equiv 0 \bmod k_{i}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$.
2. For all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ compute $R_{i} \equiv q_{i} \bmod k_{i}, N_{i}=\left\lceil q_{i} /\left(k_{i} R_{i}\right)\right\rceil$,

$$
Q_{i}=\prod_{i \neq j} q_{i} \text { and } Q=\prod_{i=1}^{n} q_{i} .
$$

3. For all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, set $b_{i} \equiv Q_{i}^{-1} R_{i} \bmod q_{i}$ and compute $s_{i}=Q_{i} b_{i} N_{i} \bmod Q$.

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

4. Publish the key $\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}\right)$. The private key is given by the set of pairs $\left(q_{1}, k_{1}\right), \ldots,\left(q_{n}, k_{n}\right)$, all other parameters need not to be stored.

## Encryption

A message $M=\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$ is encrypted to the ciphertext

$$
C=\sum_{i=1}^{n} m_{i} s_{1}
$$

## Decryption

The $i$-th block of the message $M$ can be decrypted by $m_{i}=\left\lfloor k_{i} C / q_{i}\right\rfloor$.

### 4.2.2 Cryptoanalysis

Lin et al. base the security of their public key cryptosystem on the difficulty of solving linear Diophantine equations over positive integers. They claim that in order to break the protocol, an attacker has to solve

$$
X_{1} s_{1}+\cdots+X_{n} s_{n}=C
$$

and obtain the message. In fact it can be shown that this problem is NP-complete, by reducing the integer knapsack problem to solving linear Diophantine equations with positive integers. However, in [8], Cusick showed that the cipher can be broken without solving any Diophantine equations. The major weakness of the cryptosystem is the construction of the public key, where any two numbers share a large common factor. To see this, define $G_{i}=\operatorname{gcd}\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{i-1}, s_{i+1}, \ldots, s_{n}\right)$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and $G=\operatorname{gcd}\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}\right)$. By (4.3) this leads to the equations $C \equiv m_{i} s_{i} \bmod G_{i}$ and by defining $t_{i}=G_{i} / G$ we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
C / G \equiv m_{i} s_{i} / G \bmod t_{i} . \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now

$$
C / G \equiv x s_{i} / G \quad \bmod t_{i}
$$

is a linear congruence in a single variable $x$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and since we have $\operatorname{gcd}\left(s_{i} / G, G_{i} / G\right)=1$, any solutions are congruent modulo $t_{i}$. Assume that $x_{0}$ is the smallest positive solution to the above equation. In [8], Cusick proves the following lemma:

Lemma 4.2.1. Given any choice of the public key $S=\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}\right)$, we have $t_{i} \geq w$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$.

From (4.4) it follows that $x=m_{i} \leq w$ is a solution and by the above lemma we have $t_{i} \geq w$, so by solving the above linear congruence one obtains in fact $x_{0}=m_{i}$. Doing so for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, we have retrieved the message $M=\left(m_{1}, \ldots, m_{n}\right)$.

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

### 4.3 Pre-conditions For Designing Asymmetric Cryptosystem Based On Diophantine Equation Hard Problem

The negative answer to Hilbert's Tenth Problem in section 2.6 concludes that there is no algorithm that decides whether any Diophantine equation is solvable or not. When building a cryptosystem that is based on some kind of Diophantine equation, solvability is usually a triviality, since a solution is mostly part of a private key and thus always given. In addition to that, restrictions to the appearing Diophantine equation may limit the number of non-zero coefficients or the degree of the polynomial. In [2], the so called Diophantine Equation Hard Problem is introduced, addressing the solvability of Diophantine equations from the following different perspective:

Definition. Let $f=v_{1} X_{1}+\cdots+v_{n} X_{n}-u \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ and fix a solution $\mathbf{x}=$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$. We call $\mathbf{x}$ the prf-solution to $f$. The Diophantine Equation Hard Problem (DEHP) is the problem of determining a prf-solution given $f$.

Note that if a linear $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ as above is solvable, it has infinitely many solutions. For cryptography and consequent implementation purposes, one limits or even fixes the lengths of the parameters of such solutions, resulting in a finite solution space. As we will see in Proposition 5.4.6, this solution space is exponential in the size of the bound, which is the cause of the difficulty of the DEHP.

### 4.3.1 The Protocol

Assume that we have given a message $M \in \mathbb{Z}$ with bit length $2 n$ and $M<2^{2 n-1}+$ $2^{2 n-2}$.

## AA $_{\beta}$ public key cryptosystem

## Key Generation

Alice chooses two distinct primes $p, q$ with bit lengths of $n$ and $p q>2^{2 n-1}+2^{2 n-2}$. She computes $e_{A 1}=p^{2} q$ and chooses some representant $e_{A 2}$ of an $e \in \mathbb{Z}_{p q}^{*}$ such that $e_{A 2}$ has bit length $3 n$.

## Encryption

Bob chooses some $k_{1} \in \mathbb{Z}$ with bit length $4 n$ and computes the ciphertext $C=k_{1} e_{A 1}+$ $M^{2} e_{A 2}$.

## Decryption

Set $W \equiv \mathrm{Ce}^{-1} \equiv M^{2} \bmod p q$. With the knowledge of $p, q$ and by the Chinese Remainder Theorem, the four square roots $M_{1}, M_{2}, M_{3}, M_{4}$ of $W$ mod pq are computed. Select the $i \in\{1,2,3,4\}$ such that

$$
k_{1}^{\prime}=\frac{C-M_{i}^{2}}{e_{A 1}} \in \mathbb{Z}
$$

and set $M_{i}=M$.
Asbullah and Ariffin prove that the decryption works for the choice of the above parameters, and that there are no decryption errors.

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

### 4.3.2 Cryptoanalysis

The security of the protocol has been analyzed in [28]. With the bounds on $k_{1}$ and the message $M$ in the encryption process, the underlying instance of the DEHP is the solution of

$$
C=k_{1} e_{A 1}+M^{2} e_{A 2}
$$

for unknowns $k_{1}$ and $M^{2}$, since the other parameters are public and thus known to an adversary. Despite the simple nature of this equation, no known attack for this equation can retrieve the secret parameters within a feasible amount of time. Indeed, the parameters of the protocol where chosen such that the Euclidean Algorithm or Gaussian Lattice Reduction lead to a solution, but not efficiently enough to break the protocol. It is shown that encryption of the $A A_{\beta}$ protocol has time complexity of $\mathcal{O}\left(n^{2}\right)$.

### 4.4 Multivariate Public Key Cryptosystems from Diophantine Equations

As many other public key systems, multivariate public key cryptosystems (MPKC) are based on the idea of a trapdoor function. In the case of MPKCs, this trapdoor function takes the form of a multivariate polynomial system of equations over a finite field $k$, where the polynomials are usually quadratic. The public key is represented by a map

$$
\bar{F}: k^{n} \rightarrow k^{m}, \bar{F}=L_{1} \circ F \circ L_{2}
$$

where $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ with $m \geq n, L_{1}: k^{m} \rightarrow k^{m}$ and $L_{2}: k^{n} \rightarrow k^{n}$ are random invertible affine transformations and the so-called central map $F: k^{n} \rightarrow k^{m}$ is an invertible nonlinear multivariate polynomial map. The functions $L_{1}, L_{2}$ and in some cases $F$ form the private key of this cryptosystem. Two recent MPKCs are so called triangular and oil-vinegar systems. In [13], Gao and Heindl offer a framework which is a mixture of both, as discussed in the next section. To present this, we first need to make the following definition:

Definition. Let $k$ be a finite field. We call $f \in k\left[\check{x}_{1}, \ldots, \check{x}_{v}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{0}\right]$ an oil-vinegar polynomial if it is of the form

$$
f=\sum_{i=1}^{o} \sum_{j=1}^{v} a_{i j} x_{i} \check{x}_{j}+\sum_{i=1}^{v} \sum_{j=1}^{v} b_{i j} \check{x}_{i} \check{x}_{j}+\sum_{i=1}^{o} c_{i} x_{i}+\sum_{j=1}^{v} d_{j} \check{x}_{j}+e .
$$

We call $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{0}$ the oil variables and $\check{x}_{1}, \ldots, \check{x}_{v}$ the vinegar variables.

### 4.4.1 General Framework

Let $k, \mathbb{F}$ be finite fields with $[\mathbb{F}: k]=d$ and $l, t \in \mathbb{N}$, where $l$ is the number of layers of oil-vinegar systems and $t$ is the number of polynomials of a system. First we describe how the public key is constructed. For the function $\bar{F}$, both $L_{1}, L_{2}$ are randomly chosen,

## 4 Cryptographic protocols based on Diophantine Equations

so that we only have to construct the central map $F: \mathbb{F}^{n+l o} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{n+l t}$. To do so, let $f_{i}$ be oil-vinegar polynomials such that there are nonlinear

$$
g_{i} \in \mathbb{F}\left[Y_{n+(i-1) t+1}, \ldots, Y_{n+i t}\right], \quad i \in\{1, \ldots, l\},
$$

where each $g_{i}\left(f_{n+(i-1) t+1}, \ldots, f_{n+i t}\right)$ is a product of quadratic factors in $\mathbb{F}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+l o}\right]$. Let $\psi_{1}, \ldots, \psi_{n}$ be $n$ such quadratic factors. We define the first triangular system by

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y_{i}=f_{i}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+l o}\right)=X_{i}+\phi_{i}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{i}\right)+\psi_{i}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+l o}\right), \quad i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}, \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where every $\phi_{i}$ is a quadratic polynomial. Next, by setting $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ the initial vinegar and $X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_{n+o}$ the oil variables, we have the first oil-vinegar system

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y_{n+i}=f_{n+1}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}, X_{n+1}, \ldots, X_{n+o}\right), \quad i \in\{1, \ldots, t\} . \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this way, $l$ layers are constructed, where the $j$-th layer is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
Y_{n}+i=f_{n+i}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+(j-1) o}, X_{n+(j-1) o+1}, \ldots, X_{n+j o}\right) \quad i \in\{(j-1) t+1, j t\} \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $j \in\{2, \ldots, l\}$, with vinegar variables $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+(j-1) o}$ and with oil variables $X_{n+(j-1) o+1}, \ldots, X_{n+j o}$. The central map is then given as

$$
F\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+l o}\right)=\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n+l t}\right) .
$$

In order to conduct the decryption, we need to assume that there are functions $h_{i}$ such that

$$
h_{i}\left(g_{1}, \ldots, g_{l}\right)=\psi_{i}
$$

for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. The decryption of a ciphertext $C \in k^{m}$ is performed as follows: First compute

$$
\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n+l t}\right)=L_{1}^{-1}(C)
$$

and compute the value of $\psi_{i}$ by substituting $Y_{n+1}, \ldots, Y_{n+l t}$ into $g_{1}, \ldots, g_{l}$ and evaluating the $h_{i}$. This way, (4.5), (4.6) and (4.7) form a triangular system of equations, which can be solved iteratively. With the resulting $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+l o}$ we finish the decryption by

$$
M=L_{2}^{-1}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n+l o}\right) .
$$

Unfortunately, this framework includes two possibilities for decryption failure. First, one may not be able to compute inverses for evaluating the $h_{i}$. Second, for any oil-vinegar system, the linear systems in the oil variables may not be solvable.

### 4.4.2 An Instance Based on Diophantine Equations

Gao and Heindl show how to construct a cryptosystem based on the above framework and on Diophantine equations of the form

$$
A B=C D+E F+G H+I J+K L,
$$

where $C, D, \ldots, J$ are oil-vinegar polynomials and there are no restrictions on $K$ and $L$. The equation can be rewritten as

$$
\psi_{1} \psi_{2}=f_{1} f_{2}+\ldots+f_{9} f_{10}
$$

where $\operatorname{deg} \psi_{1}=\operatorname{deg} \psi_{2}=\operatorname{deg} f_{i}=2$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, 10\}$ and

- $\psi_{1} \in \mathbb{F}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right], \psi_{2} \in \mathbb{F}\left[Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right]$,
- $f_{i} \in \mathbb{F}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}, Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right]$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, 10\}$ and further $f_{i}$ are oil-vinegar polynomials for $i \in\{1, \ldots, 8\}$.
Without going into detail, the central map is constructed to be of the form $F: \mathbb{F}^{45} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{74}$ consisting of one triangular system and 7 layers of oil-vinegar systems.


### 4.4.3 Cryptoanalysis

When trying to break the protocol with attack strategies based on either linear algebra or algebraic attacks, which have proven to be useful at analyzing other multivariate public key cryptosystems, the cryptosystem seems to be secure for the choice of at least $|k|=2^{16}$ and $d=[\mathbb{F}: k]=1$. A higher choice of any of those two variables may increase security, but will decrease efficiency of the cryptosystem.

## 5 The Key Exchange Protocol by Harry Yosh

Let $R$ be a ring with unity, and assume that there exist some $a \in R, b \in \mathbb{N}$ such that the function

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_{a, b} & : R[X] \rightarrow R[X] \\
& X \mapsto(X+a)^{b}
\end{aligned}
$$

is invertible. In the key exchange protocol proposed by Harry Yosh, two participants Alice and Bob want to agree on a secret with the use of public key cryptography. The public key of Alice consists of a multidimensional Diophantine equation, and her secret is a predetermined solution to this equation. As we will see, this cryptographic protocol can be executed for the cases $R=\mathbb{Z}$ and $R=\mathbb{F}_{q}$.

### 5.1 The Protocol

## Yosh's key exchange protocol

1. Alice chooses a polynomial $f \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] \backslash R$ and some $\mathbf{r}=\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \in R^{n}$, such that $\mathbf{r}$ is a solution to the Diophantine equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=0 \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

She publishes $f$ and keeps $\mathbf{r}$ a secret.
2. Bob chooses some $g \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ and parameters $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}, b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m} \in R$ such that $T_{a_{i}, b_{i}}$ is invertible for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$, where $T_{a, b}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_{a, b}: R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] & \rightarrow R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right], \\
q & \mapsto(q+a)^{b} .
\end{aligned}
$$

He computes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.h^{\prime}=T_{a_{m}, b_{m}} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}(g)=\left(\ldots\left(g+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots+a_{m}\right)^{b_{m}} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and chooses a representative $h$ of $h^{\prime}$ in $R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] /(f)$. Bob publishes both $g$ and $h$.
3. Alice now computes both $s=g(\mathbf{r})$ and $u=h(\mathbf{r})$ and sends $u$ to Bob.
4. In the last step, Bob computes

$$
T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}^{-1} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{m}, b_{m}}^{-1}(u)=s .
$$

## 5 The Key Exchange Protocol by Harry Yosh



Figure 5.1: After finishing the protocol, Alice and Bob share a secret $s \in R$.

Theorem 5.1.1. After running the protocol above, Alice and Bob have a shared secret s.
Proof. Alice first calculates $s$ by $s=g(\mathbf{r})$. Since $h \equiv h^{\prime} \bmod f$, there is some $q \in$ $R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that $h=h^{\prime}+f q$. Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
u=h(\mathbf{r})=h^{\prime}(\mathbf{r})+f(\mathbf{r}) q(\mathbf{r})=h^{\prime}(\mathbf{r}), \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and with (5.2) we get

$$
T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}^{-1} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{m}, b_{m}}^{-1}(u)=T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}^{-1} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{m}, b_{m}}^{-1}\left(h^{\prime}(\mathbf{r})\right)=g(\mathbf{r})=s .
$$

A simplification of Yosh' protocol was made in [18] by using only 2 parameters $a$ and $b$ for the function $T_{a, b}$. It was originally defined as

$$
T_{a, b, c}^{\prime}(x)=(x+a)^{b}+c,
$$

which would lead to

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T_{a_{m}^{\prime}, b_{m}^{\prime}, c_{m}} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{1}^{\prime}, b_{1}^{\prime}, c_{1}}(g)= \\
& \left.\left(\cdots\left(g+a_{1}^{\prime}\right)^{b_{1}^{\prime}}+c_{1}+a_{2}^{\prime}\right)^{b_{2}^{\prime}}+\cdots+c_{m-1}+a_{m}^{\prime}\right)^{b_{m}^{\prime}}+c_{m}
\end{aligned}
$$

in (5.2). But this equals $T_{a_{m+1}, b_{m+1}} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}(g)$ with $a_{1}=a_{1}^{\prime}, a_{j}=a_{j}^{\prime}+c_{j-1}, a_{m+1}=c_{m}$, $b_{k}=b_{k}^{\prime}, b_{m+1}=1$ for $j \in\{2, \ldots, m\}, k \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$, so the third parameter $c$ is obsolete.

A single protocol run between Alice and Bob established exactly one secret $s$, and both participants have exactly one public key. Thus a single protocol run is represented by the parameters used to exchange the secret $s$.

Remark We denote the parameters of a given protocol run as $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$, where $f=0$ is a Diophantine equation as in 5.1, $\mathbf{r} \in R^{n}$ a solution to this Diophantine equation and $g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ are chosen as in step 2 of the protocol, where $\mathbf{a}=\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)$ and $\mathbf{b}=\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m}\right)$ for some $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Note that from $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}), \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are kept secret, whereas $f, g$ and $h$ can be assumed to be available for any attacker. Furthermore, we will always denote by $n$ the number of variables and by $m$ the number of $a_{i}, b_{i}$ as chosen in step 2 of the protocol, unless indicated otherwise.

### 5.2 Security Essentials

In Yosh's brief analysis of the protocol, two possible points for an attack of the protocol were given. First of all, an attacker observes the system

$$
\begin{align*}
& f\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=0 \\
& h\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=u . \tag{5.4}
\end{align*}
$$

By solving the system (5.4) an attacker knows the solution $\mathbf{r} \in R^{n}$, so he can compute $g(\mathbf{r})=s$. However, if this system is positive-dimensional, it is hard to solve in general as we have seen in Chapter 2. A second strategy that Yosh proposed for a possible attack was to decipher the sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{a_{m}, b_{m}} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}(g) \equiv h \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and thus retrieve the numbers $a_{1}, b_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}, b_{m}$. With these numbers, an attacker can compute the secret $s$ like in step 4 of the protocol, since $u$ is part of the public information of sender and recipient. Similar to (5.5), an attacker can also try to decipher

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{a_{m}, b_{m}} \circ \cdots \circ T_{a_{1}, b_{1}}(s)=u . \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that this equation follows immediately from (5.3) and (5.2). A notable difference between the two equations above is, that $h$ is only one representative of the left-hand side of (5.5), whereas equality holds for the equation above. In addition to that, $s$ adds another unknown to equation (5.6) in comparison to (5.5). The equation (5.6) is further analyzed in 5.4.1.

Lemma 5.2.1. Let $f \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] \backslash R$, where $R$ is a field and assume that for $\mathbf{r}=$ $\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \in R^{n}$ we have $f(\mathbf{r})=0$ and $f\left(X_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \neq 0$. Then there exist $n-1$ protocol runs with parameters $\left(f, \mathbf{r}, g_{i}, h_{i}, \mathbf{a}_{\mathbf{i}}, \mathbf{b}_{\mathbf{i}}\right), i \in\{2, \ldots, n\}$, such that the system of polynomial equations

$$
\begin{align*}
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & =0, \\
h_{i}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & =u_{i}, i \in\{2, \ldots, n\} \tag{5.7}
\end{align*}
$$

has only finitely many solutions.

Proof. Let $f_{0} \in R\left[X_{2}, \ldots, X_{n}\right], f_{1} \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be the unique polynomials such that $f=f_{0}+X_{1} f_{1}$. Further let

$$
G:=\left\{\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in R^{n-1} \mid\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in R^{n} \backslash V\left(f_{0}, f_{1}\right)\right\},
$$

where $V\left(f_{0}, f_{1}\right)$ is the affine variety $V\left(f_{0}, f_{1}\right)=\left\{\mathbf{x} \in R^{n} \mid f_{0}(\mathbf{x})=f_{1}(\mathbf{x})=0\right\}$. Since $f \neq 0$, at least one of the polynomials $f_{0}, f_{1}$ is not equal to 0 , hence $G$ contains infinitely many points. Note that $\left(r_{2}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \in G$.
Now consider the choice of the $h_{i}$. For any $g_{i} \in R\left[X_{i}\right]$, consider the equation $0=$ $h_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)-u_{i}$. When we choose $h=h^{\prime}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =h_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)-u_{i}=h_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)-h_{i}\left(r_{i}\right)=h_{i}^{\prime}\left(x_{i}\right)-h_{i}^{\prime}\left(r_{i}\right) \\
& =\left(\ldots\left(g_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+\cdots+a_{m}\right)^{b_{m}}-\left(\ldots\left(g_{i}\left(r_{i}\right)+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+\cdots+a_{m}\right)^{b_{m}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus $h_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)-u_{i}=0$ if and only if $g_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)-g_{i}\left(r_{i}\right)=0$. We claim that we can fix parameters $\left(f, \mathbf{r}, g_{i}, h_{i}, \mathbf{a}_{\mathbf{i}}, \mathbf{b}_{\mathbf{i}}\right), i \in\{2, \ldots, n\}$ such that

$$
V\left(h_{2}-u_{2}, \ldots, h_{n}-u_{n}\right) \subseteq G .
$$

Indeed, if we set for example $g_{i}=X_{i}$ for all $i \in\{2, \ldots, n\}$, then $h_{i}\left(x_{i}\right)-u_{i}=0$ if and only if $x_{i}=r_{i}$ and

$$
V\left(h_{2}-u_{2}, \ldots, h_{n}-u_{n}\right)=\left\{\left(r_{2}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)\right\} \subset G .
$$

So for any $\left(a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \in V\left(h_{2}-u_{2}, \ldots, h_{n}-u_{n}\right)$, we have $f\left(X_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \in R\left[X_{1}\right] \backslash$ $\{0\}$, and thus $f\left(X_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)=0$ has only finitely many solutions, since $V\left(h_{2}-\right.$ $u_{2}, \ldots, h_{n}-u_{n}$ ) is finite, as every polynomial $h_{i}$ is a polynomial in only one unknown. It follows that (5.7) has only finitely many solutions.

Assume that $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ and $g$ are chosen such that $\operatorname{gcd}(f, h-u) \in R$. Then the system

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=0 \\
& h\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=u
\end{aligned}
$$

is obviously zero dimensional, thus it can be solved within a short amount of time. This gives a lower bound for $n$, namely $n \geq 3$.
In many instances it is convenient to reuse the public key of a protocol. In the case of Yosh's key exchange protocol, this may be done at most $n-2$ times.
Proposition 5.2.2. The protocol can be used at most $n-2$ times using the same parameters $f$ and $\mathbf{r}$.

Proof. Assume that Alice has run the protocol (not necessarily with the same partner Bob) $i$ times using the pair $f$ and $\mathbf{r}$. At the $i$-th run, an adversary observes the system as in (5.4):

$$
\begin{gathered}
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=0, \\
h_{i}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=u_{i} .
\end{gathered}
$$

It follows that after $n-1$ protocol runs, $n$ equations in $n$ unknowns are given, leading to a system of equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & =0, \\
h_{1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & =u_{1}, \\
\vdots & \\
h_{n-1}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) & =u_{n}-1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

By Lemma 5.2.1, this system may be zero-dimensional and thus vulnerable to an attack.

Next we define bounds on $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ used in a protocol with parameters ( $f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ ).
Definition. $k$ Let $R$ be a ring with unity and absolute value $|\cdot|, \mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S} \in \mathbb{N}$, and let

$$
\hat{\mathcal{B}}(R)=\left\{b \in \mathbb{N} \mid T_{b} \text { is invertible }\right\}
$$

where $T_{b}: R[X] \rightarrow R[X]$ with $x \mapsto x^{b}$. Further let $P(\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S})$ be the set of all parameters $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$ for protocol runs such that the number of steps for performing step 1-4 of the protocol is bounded by $\mathcal{T}$ and the number of bits needed to store ( $f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ ) is at most $\mathcal{S}$. We define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{M}_{\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}}:=\max \left\{\left|a_{i}\right| \in \mathbb{N} \mid \exists(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) \in P(\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}) \text { with } \mathbf{a}\right. \\
& \mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}}:=\left.=\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{i}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)\right\}, \\
&\left\{b_{i} \in \mathcal{\mathcal { B }}(R) \mid \exists(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) \in P(\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}) \text { with } \mathbf{b}=\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{i}, \ldots, b_{m}\right)\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Further define

$$
\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}}(R):=\left\{b \in \hat{\mathcal{B}}(R) \mid b \leq \mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}}\right\} .
$$

Note that in the above definition, we consider the size of the $a_{i}$ as a natural number $\left|a_{i}\right|$. This makes sense, since we want to measure the $a_{i}$ by the number of bits that are needed to represent them.
Let $\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S} \in \mathbb{N}$ and $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$ be the parameters of a protocol run such that $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) \in P(\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S})$. We want to investigate lower bounds on $\mathcal{T}$ and $\mathcal{S}$. To do so, we only cover step 2 of the protocol, since step 1 depends on the way of choosing $f$, and both step 3 and 4 can be executed efficiently.
So assume that $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} g=t_{i}$. Then $u_{i}^{\prime}=\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} h^{\prime}=t_{i} b_{1} b_{2} \ldots b_{m}$. The upper bound on the number of terms for $h^{\prime}$ is given by $\left(u_{1}+1\right) \ldots\left(u_{n}+1\right)$, and since polynomials in sparse representations, e.g. polynomials with relatively few non-zero terms compared to their degree, are rare, we can assume that the number of non-zero terms of $h^{\prime}$ is

$$
\mathcal{O}\left(u_{1} \ldots u_{n}\right)=\mathcal{O}\left(t_{1} \ldots t_{n}\left(b_{1} b_{2} \ldots b_{m}\right)^{n}\right) .
$$

We choose $h$ such that $h \equiv h^{\prime} \bmod f$, thus there is some $H \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that $h=h^{\prime}+H f$. By assuming that $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} f \leq u_{i}^{\prime}$ for any $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, we can always choose $H$ such that $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} h \leq u_{i}$. Since $h$ is part of the public key, we cannot store $h$ as $h^{\prime}+H f$, since the knowledge of $h^{\prime}$ might lead to an attack on the protocol as we will see later. Thus $h$ needs to be stored in dense representation, which needs
$\mathcal{O}\left(t_{1} \ldots t_{n}\left(b_{1} b_{2} \ldots b_{m}\right)^{n}\right)$ many bits.
For the sake of convenience we write $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ instead of $\mathcal{M}_{\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}}$ and $\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{S}}$ when not talking about certain bounds $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{T}$.

A way for an attacker to retrieve the secret $s$ is to find solutions to the Diophantine equation $f=0$. Finding the solution $\mathbf{r}$ is not the only way of attacking the protocol. If the Diophantine equation has at least $m$ solutions, the protocol can be broken if $m$ of them are given, even without knowing r.

Proposition 5.2.3. Let $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$ be the parameters of a protocol run. If an adversary can compute $m$ different solutions to the Diophantine equation (5.1), then he can also compute $s$ in $\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{m+n}\right)$.

Proof. First note that if one of the computed solutions is in fact $\mathbf{r}$, then the adversary can compute $s$ by simply following the protocol.
Let now $\mathbf{t} \in R^{n}$ such that $f(\mathbf{t})=0$. An adversary knows $g$, so he can compute $\beta=g(\mathbf{t})$. As a representative of $h^{\prime}$ in $R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] /(f), h$ is of the form $h=h^{\prime}+S f$ for some $S \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$, hence $h(\mathbf{t})=h^{\prime}(\mathbf{t})$. This gives us the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left(\cdots\left(\beta+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots+a_{m}\right)^{b_{m}}=h(\mathbf{t}) . \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Assume now that we have $m$ different solutions to (5.1), $\mathbf{t}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{t}_{m} \in R^{n}$ and fix some $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m} \in\{1,3,5, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$. By defining

$$
h_{k}=h\left(\mathbf{t}_{k}\right), \beta_{k}=g\left(\mathbf{t}_{k}\right) \text { for } k \in\{1, \ldots, m\}
$$

and introducing integer variables $G_{j}^{(i)}$ for $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$, we can transform the set of $m$ equations of the form (5.8) into the following polynomial system:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A:= \begin{cases}G_{1}^{(1) b_{1}}=h_{1}, \\
& \vdots \\
G_{m}^{(1) b_{1}} & =h_{m},\end{cases} \\
& B:=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
G_{j}^{(i)}=G_{j}^{(i+1) b_{m-i}}+a_{(m+1-i)}, j \in\{1, \ldots, m\}, i \in\{2, \ldots, m-1\}
\end{array}\right. \\
& C:= \begin{cases}G_{1}^{(m)} & =\beta_{1}+a_{1}, \\
\vdots \\
G_{m}^{(m)} & =\beta_{m}+a_{1} .\end{cases}
\end{aligned}
$$

There are $m^{2}+m$ unknowns, namely $a_{i}, G_{j}^{(i)}$ for $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$. Moreover, there are $m$ equations in the set $A, m(m-1)$ in the set $B$ and again $m$ in $C$, giving us $m^{2}+m$ equations. This system is zero-dimensional, hence it can be solved in $\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{n}\right)$ steps using an algorithm based on Gröbner bases as in [23]. Since we have to solve the above system for any $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m} \in \mathcal{B}(R)$, this gives us a runtime of $\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{n} \mathcal{B}^{m}\right)$

### 5.2.1 Importance of Choosing a Representant $h$

In step 2 of Yosh's key exchange protocol, the public key part $h$ is chosen as a representative of $h^{\prime}$ in $R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] /(f)$. This not only leads to a possible reduction of the size of the public key, but also adds to the security of the protocol. In fact, we can show that if $h=h^{\prime}$, an attacker can break the protocol in at most $\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{2 m t}|\mathcal{B}(R)|^{m+1}\right)$, where $t=\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} g$ for some $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that $t \geq 0$. As we will see later, $\mathcal{B}, m$ and $t$ have to be small positive integers for the protocol to be efficient, thus such an attack would be managable within a feasible amount of time. To do so, we have to establish how to efficiently compute $a \in R, r \in \mathcal{B}(R)$ and $h \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ for a given $f \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
h^{r}+a=f . \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the rest of the chapter assume that $h^{\prime}=h$ and that $R$ is an integral domain.
First let $f, h \in R[X]$ with $f=a_{n} X^{n}+\cdots+a_{1} X+a_{0}, g=b_{m} X^{m}+\cdots+b_{1} X+b_{0}$ such that $f=h^{r}$ for some $r \in \mathbb{N}_{\geq 2}$ with $x \mapsto x^{r}$ invertible. Then $r \mid n$ and $b_{m}^{r}=a_{n}$. By expanding $h^{r}$ we get

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left(b_{m} X^{m}+\cdots+b_{1} X+b_{0}\right)^{r}= \\
& B_{m} X^{n}+B_{m-1} X^{n-1}+\cdots+B_{0} X^{n-m}+\mathcal{O}\left(X^{n-m-1}\right) \tag{5.10}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{i}=b_{m}^{r-1} b_{m-i}+\sum_{\substack{k_{1} m+\cdots+k_{i-1}(m-i+1)=m r-i \\ k_{1}+\cdots+k_{i-1}=r, k \geq 0}}\binom{r}{k_{1}, \ldots, k_{i-1}} b_{1}^{k_{1}} \ldots b_{m-i+1}^{k_{m-i+1}} \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $i \in\{0, \ldots, m\}$. By (5.10) and $f=h^{r}$ we get a system of equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{m}=a_{m}, \ldots, B_{0}=a_{n-m} . \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We want to solve this system for unknowns $b_{m}, \ldots, b_{0}$. Since $r$ is invertible, $b_{m}=\sqrt[r]{a_{n}}$. Moreover, by (5.11) every $B_{i}$ is a polynomial in $b_{m}, \ldots, b_{m-i}$, thus we immediately get a solution for $b_{m-1}$ via the equation $B_{m-1}=a_{m-1}$, which leads to a solution for $b_{m-2}$ via $B_{m-2}=a_{m-2}$ and so on. Hence we can solve the above system in $\mathcal{O}(m)$ steps. By [19] we can expand $\left(b_{m} X^{m}+\cdots+b_{1} X+b_{0}\right)^{r}$ in less than $r^{2}(m+1)^{2}$ steps, hence we can compute $\sqrt[r]{f}=h$ in

$$
\mathcal{O}\left(r^{2}(m+1)^{2}\right)+\mathcal{O}(m)=\mathcal{O}\left(r^{2}\left(\frac{n}{r}\right)^{2}\right)=\mathcal{O}\left(n^{2}\right)
$$

The procedure above computes $\sqrt[r]{f}=h$ without needing the constant term of $f$, therefore to solve an equation of the form $f=a+h^{r}$, we can first compute $h$ and then $a=f(0)-(h(0))^{r}$. To use this for an equation of the form (5.9), we can view any $f \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ as a polynomial in $X_{i}$ over $R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{i-1}, X_{i+1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ where $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} f \geq 0$.
This leads to Algorithm 1.

```
Algorithm 1: Find all solutions for \(a_{i}, b_{i}\) to the nested equation
\(\left.\left(\ldots\left(g\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=h\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)\)
    Let \(L M(g)=X_{1}^{\beta_{1}} \ldots X_{n}^{\beta_{n}}\)
    \(j=0 \quad\) /* global variable */
    NestedRoot ( \(0, h, j\) )
    Function NestedRoot (i,H,I)
        Let \(L M(H)=X_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} \ldots X_{n}^{\alpha_{n}}\)
        \(D=\operatorname{gcd}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)\)
        for \(r \in\{x \in \mathcal{B}(R)\} \mid x\) divides \(D\}\) do
            if \(\beta_{i} \nmid \frac{\alpha_{i}}{r}\) for any \(i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}\) then
            stop
            \(G=\sqrt[r]{H}\)
            \(j=j+1\)
            if \(i<m-2\) then
                \(b_{m-i-1}^{[I, j]}=r\)
                \(a_{m-i}^{[I, j]}=H(\mathbf{0})-G(\mathbf{0})\)
                NestedRoot \((i+1, G, j)\)
            else
                if \(\left(G\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)-G(0)\right)=(g-g(0))\) then
                    \(b_{1}^{[I, j]}=r\)
                    \(a_{2}^{[I, j]}=H(\mathbf{0})-G(\mathbf{0})\)
                    \(a_{1}^{[I, j]}=G(\mathbf{0})-g(\mathbf{0})\)
```

Note that Algorithm 1 only works if $m$ is known. For unknown $m$, one could run the algorithm for all $m \in\{1, \ldots, K\}$ where

$$
K=\max \left\{k \in \mathbb{N} \mid a^{k} \operatorname{deg} g \leq \operatorname{deg} h\right\}
$$

and $1<a=\min \mathcal{B}(R)$. This is an upper bound for $m$, since by our assumption of $h$, we have $\operatorname{deg} h=\operatorname{deg} g b_{1} \ldots b_{m}$ for some $b_{i} \in \mathcal{B}(R)$. Thus the algorithm has to be run at most $(\log \operatorname{deg} h-\log \operatorname{deg} g) / \log a$ times. Further note that the step

$$
G(X)=\sqrt[r]{H(X)}
$$

may not be computed the way it is above for every $r$, since $H(X)$ is not an $r$-th power for all $r \in\{x \in \mathcal{B}(R)\} \mid x$ divides $D\}$ in general. Hence we need to add the step of checking that $G(X) \in R[X]$ and $G(X)^{r}=H(X)$, which does not increase the time for taking the $r$-th root of $\mathcal{O}\left(n^{2}\right)$.

Theorem 5.2.4. Let $g, h \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} g=t$ for some $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that $t \geq 1$. Algorithm 1 finds all $a_{i} \in R, b_{i} \in \mathcal{B}(R), i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left(\ldots\left(g\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=h\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right) \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

in at most $\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{2 m t}|\mathcal{B}(R)|^{m+1}\right)$.

Proof. As we have seen before, for a given $h \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] \operatorname{NestedRoot}(0, h, j)$ computes all $b_{m-1} \in \mathcal{B}(R), a_{m} \in R$ and $g_{m-1} \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that

$$
g_{m-1}^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=h .
$$

For $i \in\{1, \ldots m-2\} \operatorname{NestedRoot}\left(i, g_{m-i}, j\right)$ gives us all solutions for

$$
g_{m-i-1}^{b_{m-i-1}}+a_{m-1}=g_{m-i}
$$

and thus we receive $a_{j}, b_{j}, g_{j}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
h & =g_{m-1}^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m} \\
& =\left(g_{m-2}^{b_{m-2}}+a_{m-1}\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m} \\
& \vdots \\
& \left.=\left(\cdots\left(g_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We have $g+a_{1}=g_{1}$, hence $a_{1}=g_{1}(\mathbf{0})-g(\mathbf{0})$. Taking any root of $h$ takes at most $\left(t b_{1} \ldots b_{m}\right)^{2}=\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{2 m}\right)$ time, and since $\operatorname{deg} g_{i}<\operatorname{deg} h$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, m-1\}$, this gives an upper bound for any root calculation performed in the algorithm. By the nested character of the NestedRoot calls, the algorithm finds all solutions to 5.13 in

$$
\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{2 m}\right)\left(|\mathcal{B}(R)|+\cdots+|\mathcal{B}(R)|^{m}\right)=\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{2 m}\right) \frac{|\mathcal{B}(R)|^{m+1}-1}{|\mathcal{B}(R)|-1}=\mathcal{O}\left(\mathcal{B}^{2 m t}|\mathcal{B}(R)|^{m+1}\right)
$$

Algorithm $I$ finds at most $\mathcal{B}^{m}$ pairs ( $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ ) satisfying (5.13). To choose one, let $A$ be the set of all $a_{k_{1}}^{\left[I_{1}, I_{2}\right]}$ computed by the algorithm, where $k_{1} \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ and $I_{1}, I_{2} \in \mathbb{N}$. For any $i_{1}, i_{2} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that there exists some $a_{1}^{\left[i_{2}, i_{1}\right]} \in A$, a solution to (5.13) is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathbf{a}=\left(a_{1}^{\left[i_{2}, i_{1}\right]}, a_{2}^{\left[i_{2}, i_{1}\right]}, a_{3}^{\left[i_{3}, i_{2}\right]}, \ldots, a_{m-1}^{\left[i_{m-1}, i_{m-2}\right]}, a_{m}^{\left[i_{m}, i_{m-1}\right]}\right), \\
& \mathbf{b}=\left(b_{1}^{\left[i_{2}, i_{1}\right]}, b_{2}^{\left[i_{3}, i_{2}\right]}, \ldots, b_{m-2}^{\left[i_{m-1}, i_{m-2}\right]}, b_{m-1}^{\left[i_{m, i}, i_{m-1}\right]}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 5.3 The Protocol over Finite Fields

We have to ensure that security of the protocol can still be given in finite fields. In 5.2 we established that the solution of the system of equations (5.4) breaks the protocol. Although the solution space over a field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ is finite, the solution of systems of higher order congruence equations is NP-complete for $n \geq 3$, c.f. [14].
Next, we require the function $x \mapsto x^{b}$ to be invertible over $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$. It is a well-known fact that this holds if and only if $\operatorname{gcd}(q-1, b)=1$. The following lemma gives us a way of fixing a finite field suitable for the protocol:

Lemma 5.3.1. Let $p_{1}, p_{2}$ be odd prime numbers with $p_{2} \mid\left(2^{p_{1}}-1\right)$. Then $p_{2}>p_{1}$.

Proof. Since

$$
2^{p_{1}} \equiv 1 \quad \bmod p_{2},
$$

we have $\operatorname{ord}_{\mathbb{F}_{p_{2}}^{*}} 2 \mid p_{1}$, and since $p_{1}$ is prime $\operatorname{ord}_{\mathbb{F}_{p_{2}}^{*}} 2=p_{1}$. Thus $p_{1} \mid\left(p_{2}-1\right)$ and it follows that $p_{2}>p_{1}$.

Now let $\mathcal{B}$ be an upper bound for the exponents $b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m}$. For any prime number $r$, the smallest prime factor of $2^{r}-1$ is at least $r$. Thus by choosing $r$ prime with $r>\mathcal{B}$ and $q=2^{r}$, every exponentiation we perform in the protocol is invertible in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$.

### 5.3.1 Choosing a Polynomial $f$

As in [18], we are going to use Theorem 3.4.1 to construct a Diophantine equation $f\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)=0$ over a finite field, which can not be solved in a reasonable amount of time by guessing solutions $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ uniformly at random. In order to do so, we need to find homogeneous polynomials $A$ and $B$ that fulfill the requirements of the theorem.
Proposition 5.3.2. Let $F=A+B \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & =\alpha_{1} X_{1}^{s}+\cdots+\alpha_{n} X_{n}^{s} \\
B & =\beta_{1} X_{1}^{r}+\cdots+\beta_{n} X_{n}^{r},
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\alpha_{i}, \beta_{j} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$ for $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Let $0<s<r<q$ and further let $\operatorname{gcd}(r, q)=1$. Then $F$ satisfies all assumptions of Theorem 3.4.1.

Proof. The diagonal form of the homogeneous polynomials $A$ and $B$ ensures $\operatorname{deg} A<$ $\operatorname{deg} B=r$ and $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} B=r$ for all $i \in\{1 \ldots, n\}$, so it remains to prove that

$$
b\left(X_{k}, X_{l}\right):=B\left(0, \ldots 0, X_{k}, 0, \ldots, 0, X_{l}, 0, \ldots, 0\right)=\beta_{k} X_{k}^{r}+\beta_{l} X_{l}^{r} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{k}, X_{l}\right]
$$

has no multiple roots. The binary form $b\left(X_{k}, X_{l}\right)$ has no multiple roots at $(a, b) \in\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right)^{2}$ if and only if $\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial X_{k}} b\left(X_{k}, X_{l}\right)\right|_{X_{k}=a, X_{l}=b} \neq 0$ or $\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial X_{l}} b\left(X_{k}, X_{l}\right)\right|_{X_{k}=a, X_{l}=b} \neq 0$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}(r, q)=1$ and both $a \neq 0, \beta_{k} \neq 0$ we have $\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial X_{k}} b\left(X_{k}, X_{l}\right)\right|_{X_{k}=a, X_{l}=b}=\beta_{k} r a^{r-1} \neq 0$.

Assume now that Alice and Bob want to execute Yosh's key exchange protocol over a finite field. First, they agree on a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$, where $q=2^{r}$ for some large enough prime $r$. Then with Algorithm 2, Alice can construct a suitable Diophantine equation over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$.

Theorem 5.3.3. Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] \backslash \mathbb{F}_{q}$ be constructed by Algorithm 2. The probability of finding a root $\mathbf{x}$ of $f$, when $x$ runs uniformly through the elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$, is at most $\frac{3}{q}$.

```
Algorithm 2: Construct a polynomial \(f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]\) and \(\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\) with \(f(r)=\)
0.
    Input \(: v, M \in \mathbb{N}\)
    Choose \(\alpha_{i}, \beta_{i} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\) for \(i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}\)
    Choose \(r \in \mathbb{N}\) odd with \(3 \leq r<\left(\frac{q}{5}\right)^{3 / 13}\)
    Choose \(s \in \mathbb{N}\) with \(1 \leq s<r\)
    Set \(A=\alpha_{1} X_{1}^{s}+\cdots+\alpha_{n} X_{n}^{s}, B=\beta_{1} X_{1}^{r}+\cdots+\beta_{n} X_{n}^{r}\)
    Choose \(\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}\)
    \(\gamma=A(\mathbf{r})+B(\mathbf{r})\)
    if \(\gamma=0\) then
        go to 5
    \(f=A+B-\gamma\)
```

Proof. First, we choose the coefficients $\alpha_{i}, \beta_{i}$ of the polynomials $A$ and $B$ according to Proposition 5.3.2. Choosing $r$ odd ensures that $\operatorname{gcd}(r, q)=1$. Moreover $r<\left(\frac{q}{5}\right)^{3 / 13}$ induces $r<q$ as well as $q>5 r^{13 / 3}$. With the go to loop we choose $\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ randomly until we find a $\gamma \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$. By selecting $\mathbf{r}$ uniformly from $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$, we obtain $\gamma \neq 0$ with high probability according to Lemma 5.3.4. Thus we can assume that the algorithm terminates. By Theorem 3.4.1, $P_{\text {coll }}(A+B, \gamma) \leq \frac{3}{q}$, and therefore the same probability holds for finding a root of $f$.

Note that we assume the termination of Algorithm 2 based on a probabilistic argument. By the Schwartz-Zippel Lemma below, the probability of $A(\mathbf{x})+B(\mathbf{x}) \neq 0$ is at least

$$
1-r q^{n-1} \frac{1}{q^{n}}>1-\frac{1}{5^{3 / 13} q^{n-3 / 13}},
$$

hence it is highly unlikely that $\gamma=0$ occurs even once for any chosen $q$ and $n \geq 2$.
Lemma 5.3.4 (Schwartz-Zippel). Let $f \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be non-zero with $\operatorname{deg} f=d$ the total degree of $f$. Then the number of zeros of $f$ is at most $d q^{n-1}$.

Proof. Since $V(f)$ is a hypersurface with $\operatorname{dim} V(f)=n-1$ and $\operatorname{deg} V(f)=d$ by Proposition 3.1.2, the lemma follows directly from Lemma 3.1.5.

Despite the analogy of the Schwartz-Zippel Lemma and the above theorem, there are two main advantages for polynomials chosen subject to the conditions of Theorem 3.4.1. First, for $q$ sufficiently large, the probability of finding a uniformly chosen root $\mathbf{x}$ is always bounded by $\frac{3}{q}$, whereas the other bound, $\frac{d}{q}$ depends on the total degree $d$ of the polynomial. Second, the polynomial $f$ found by Algorithm 2 is absolutely irreducible, hence the equation $f=0$ can not be solved via factoring $f$.

### 5.3.2 Finite Fields with Characteristic Greater than 2

Now let $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ be a finite field with $2 \nmid q$. This means that we can not use Lemma 5.3.1 to set $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$.
Let $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}=\{3,5, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$, which is the set of candidates for $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)$. There are no even numbers in $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$, since $2 \mid(q-1)$ for every choice of $q$. First assume that $q$ is a prime. Then

$$
\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)=\left\{b \in \mathcal{B}^{\prime} \mid \operatorname{gcd}(q-1, b)=1\right\} .
$$

Since the greatest common divisor can be computed efficiently, this set is easy to build. If it is too small, we have to choose a different prime $q$.
Assume now that $q=p^{n}$ for a prime $p$. For small primes, it is easy to achieve a set $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{p}\right)$ which is almost as large as $\mathcal{B}^{\prime}$. Then we can choose an exponent $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\left|\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{p}\right)\right| \leq 2\left|\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|$. Indeed, for an initial choice $n_{0}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{gcd}\left(p^{n_{0}}-1, p^{n_{0}+1}-1\right) & =\operatorname{gcd}\left(p^{n_{0}}-1, p^{n_{0}+1}-p^{n_{0}}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{gcd}\left(p^{n_{0}}-1, p(p-1)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{gcd}\left(p^{n_{0}}-1, p-1\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

thus any divisor of $p^{n_{0}}-1$ that is divisible by some $b \in \mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{p}\right)$ can not be a divisor of $p^{n_{0}-1}-1$ and vice versa. In the worst case, such divisors are evenly distributed, and we can choose $n \in\left\{n_{0}, n_{0}+1\right\}$ and $q=p^{n}$ such that $\left|\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|=\frac{1}{2}\left|\mathcal{B}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}\right)\right|$.
When we choose $q$ to be a large prime, we may choose different polynomials $A$ and $B$ in Algorithm 2.

Proposition 5.3.5. Let $p$ be a prime and $q=p^{k}$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Further let $P \in \mathbb{Z}[X]$ be the irreducible polynomial

$$
P=X^{n}+\lambda_{n-1} X^{n-1}+\cdots+\lambda_{1} X+\lambda_{0}
$$

with $n<p$. Assume that $P$ has no multiple roots over $\mathbb{C}$ and that $\bar{P} \equiv P \bmod q$ has no multiple roots over $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$. Let $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n} \in \mathbb{C}$ be the roots of $P$, and define the multivariate polynomial

$$
N_{P}:=\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{1}+\alpha_{i} X_{2}+\alpha_{i}^{2} X_{3}+\cdots+\alpha_{i}^{n-1} X_{n}\right)
$$

Then $N_{P}$ is a homogeneous polynomial in $\mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ of degree $n$, and

$$
\bar{N}_{P}\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \equiv N_{P}\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) \quad \bmod q
$$

has no multiple roots in $\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right)^{2}$.

Proof. The degree of $N_{P}$ and the fact that it is homogeneous follow immediately from the definition. So we first show that $N_{P}$ is an integral polynomial. Let $M=\mathbb{Q}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{n}\right)$ and let $\mathcal{O}_{M}$ be the ring of integers of $M$. For all $\sigma \in \operatorname{Gal}(M / \mathbb{Q})$, we have

$$
\sigma\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{1}+\alpha_{i} X_{2}+\cdots+\alpha_{i}^{n-1} X_{n}\right)\right)=\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{1}+\sigma\left(\alpha_{i}\right) X_{2}+\cdots+\sigma\left(\alpha_{i}\right)^{n-1} X_{n}\right)
$$

and thus $\sigma\left(N_{P}\right)=N_{P}$, since $\sigma$ only permutes the factors in the product. Therefore we have $N_{P} \in \mathbb{Q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Moreover, $N_{P} \in \mathcal{O}_{M}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ and thus $N_{P}$ is integral since $\mathbb{Z}$ is integrally closed.
Next we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& N_{P}\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, 0, \ldots, 0\right)=\prod_{i=0}^{n}\left(X_{1}+\alpha_{i} X_{2}\right)= \\
& =X_{1}^{n}+X_{1}^{n-1} X_{2}\left(\sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} \alpha_{j}\right)+\cdots+X_{1} X_{2}^{n-1}\left(\sum_{1 \leq j_{1} \leq \ldots \leq j_{n-1} \leq n} \alpha_{j_{1}} \cdots \alpha_{j_{n-1}}\right)+X_{2}^{n} \prod_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_{i} \\
& =X_{1}^{n}+X_{1}^{n-1} X_{2} \lambda_{n-1}+\cdots+X_{1} X_{2}^{n-1} \lambda_{1}+X_{2}^{n} \lambda_{0} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Assume that for $(a, b) \in\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}\right)^{2}$ we have

$$
N_{P}(a, b, 0, \ldots, 0) \equiv b^{n-1} \bar{P}\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) \equiv 0 \quad \bmod p
$$

Then, since $b \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}, \bar{P}\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) \equiv 0 \bmod p$. Now

$$
\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial X_{1}}\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(X_{1}+\alpha_{i} X_{2}\right)\right)\right|_{X_{1}=a, X_{2}=b} \equiv b^{n-1} \bar{P}^{\prime}\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) \bmod p
$$

and this can not be equal to 0 , since $\bar{P}$ has no multiple roots.
Let now $M=\mathbb{Q}\left(\alpha_{1}\right)$, where $\alpha_{1}$ is defined as above. A polynomial as defined above is called norm form, since it is strongly related to the norm function of an algebraic number field. For $x=x_{1}+\alpha_{1} x_{2}+\cdots+\alpha_{1}^{n-1} x_{n}$ we have $x \in \mathbb{Z}\left[\alpha_{1}\right]$, and thus for the norm we have $\mathcal{N}_{M / Q} \in \mathbb{Z}$. Moreover, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{N}_{M / \mathrm{Q}}(x)=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_{i}(x) & =\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{1}+\sigma_{i}\left(\alpha_{1}\right) x_{2}+\sigma_{i}\left(\alpha_{1}\right)^{2} x_{3}+\cdots+\sigma_{i}\left(\alpha_{1}\right)^{n-1} x_{n}\right) \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(x_{1}+\alpha_{i} x_{2}+\alpha_{i}^{2} x_{3}+\cdots+\alpha_{i}^{n-1} x_{n}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Every $n$-tuple $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ corresponds uniquely to some $x \in \mathbb{Z}\left[\alpha_{1}\right]$ by setting $x=$ $x_{1}+\alpha_{1} x_{2}+\cdots+\alpha_{1}^{n-1} x_{n}$. Thus, for every $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ we have

$$
N_{P}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=\mathcal{N}_{M / Q}(x) \in \mathbb{Z}
$$

With Proposition $5 \cdot 3 \cdot 5$, we can find polynomials $A$ and $B$ satisfying the requirements of Theorem 3.4.1. By choosing polynomials $P$ and $Q$, such that $\bar{Q}$ has no multiple roots and such that $\operatorname{deg} P<\operatorname{deg} Q<\left(\frac{q}{5}\right)^{3 / 13}$, we can set $A=N_{P}$ and $B=N_{Q}$.

### 5.3.3 Choosing $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$ and $h$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$

We want to fix $r \in \mathbb{N}$ such that the size of the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}, q=2^{r}$ is large enough for the security of the key agreement protocol. By having $r \geq 127$, Theorem 5.3.3 ensures
that the polynomial which is output by Algorithm 2 is a Diophantine equation which can be used as a public key. In chapter 5.2 , we already concluded that $\mathcal{B}$ has to be a small positive integer. In the case of finite fields, we can abandon the bound $\mathcal{M}$ and choose $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{*}$. This way an adversary has no chance of obtaining the secret $s$ with methods like we will discuss in section 5.4.1. To choose the representative $h$ of $h^{\prime}$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right] /(f)$, we can choose some $V \in \mathbb{F}_{q}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ randomly with $1 \leq \operatorname{deg} V \leq \operatorname{deg} f$ and set $h=h^{\prime}+V f$.

### 5.4 The Protocol over $\mathbb{Z}$

It is well-known that the function $T_{b}: \mathbb{Z}[X] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[X], X \mapsto X^{b}$ is invertible if and only if $b$ is odd. This means that $\mathcal{B}$ is some positive odd integer, $\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{Z})=\{3,5, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$ and clearly $|\mathcal{B}(\mathbb{Z})|=(\mathcal{B}-1) / 2$.

### 5.4.1 Security over $\mathbb{Z}$

Assume that we have given the equation

$$
X_{m}^{b_{m}}=u,
$$

with known $u \in \mathbb{Z}$ and unknowns $X_{m} \in \mathbb{Z}, b_{m} \in \mathbb{N}, b_{m}$ odd, and assume we know that there exists at least one solution to this equation. By [4] (and assuming that $|u|>16$ ), we can use a perfect-power classification algorithm to compute some $\bar{X}$ and $\bar{b}$ in $(\log |u|) \exp \mathcal{O}(\sqrt{\log \log |u| \log \log \log |u|})$ steps such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{X}^{\bar{b}}=u . \tag{5.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

By Proposition 5.4.1, we can ensure that $\bar{b}$ is an odd integer by factoring out a maximal power of 2 and raising $\bar{X}$ by the same power. This allows us to uniquely compute $u^{\prime}:=u^{1 / b_{m}}$. Now assume that $(f, \mathbf{r}, g, h, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$ are the parameters of a given protocol run. From equations (5.3) and (5.2) we can deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left.\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}\right)^{b_{m}}=u . \tag{5.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparing this with what we have computed above, we can write $\bar{X}$ as $\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+\right.$ $\cdots)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}$ ), leading to a similar equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{m-1}^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=u^{\prime} \Leftrightarrow X_{m-1}^{b_{m-1}}=u^{\prime}-a_{m} . \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\left.X_{m-1}=\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-2}}+a_{m-1}\right)$.
Proposition 5.4.1. Let $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $k=p_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} \ldots p_{m}^{\alpha_{m}}$ its prime decomposition. Then $k$ is a perfect power if and only if $D:=\operatorname{gcd}\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{m}\right)>1$. Moreover, the positive integer solutions to the equation

$$
X^{b}=k
$$

are given by

$$
b=\frac{D}{d}, X=k^{d / D}
$$

where d runs over all positive divisors of $D$.

Proof. First assume that $D>1$. By setting $\bar{k}:=p_{1}^{\alpha_{1} / D} \ldots p_{m}^{\alpha_{m} / D} \in \mathbb{N}$ we can write $k=\bar{k}^{D}$, meaning that $k$ is a perfect power. If $k=\bar{k}^{a}$ for some $k, a \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a>1$, then, by the uniqueness of the prime decomposition in $\mathbb{Z}, a \mid \alpha_{i}$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ and thus $a \mid D$, so $D>1$.

In Definition 5.2, we have introduced positive integers $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{B}$, such that $\mathcal{M}$ is the upper bound of the absolute values of the $a_{i}$, i.e. $\left|a_{i}\right| \leq \mathcal{M}$ for $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ is a bound for the $b_{j}, j \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$. This means that equation (5.16) has only finitely many solutions. So let $\bar{X}_{m-1}, \bar{b}_{m-1}, a_{m}$ be such a solution. Again $\bar{X}_{m-1}$ is of the form

$$
\left.\bar{X}_{m-1}=\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m-1}=X_{m-2}^{b_{m-2}}-a_{m-1} .
$$

By iterating this method, we can deduce Algorithm 3.

```
Algorithm 3: Find all possible solutions to the nested equation
\(\left.\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=u\) with bounds on the unknowns
Input \(: u \in \mathbb{Z}, m, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{M} \in \mathbb{N}\)
Output:An array containing all possible solutions
```

```
\(j=0\)
```

$j=0$
/* global variable */
/* global variable */
Findpairs $<m(1, u, 0)$
Findpairs $<m(1, u, 0)$
Function Findpairs ${ }_{<m}(i, c, I)$
Function Findpairs ${ }_{<m}(i, c, I)$
for $b \in\{3,5,7, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$ do
for $b \in\{3,5,7, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$ do
$x_{0}=\left\lfloor c^{1 / b}\right\rfloor$
$x_{0}=\left\lfloor c^{1 / b}\right\rfloor$
$k=0$
$k=0$
$x_{k}^{-}=x_{0}$
$x_{k}^{-}=x_{0}$
while $c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}<\mathcal{M}$ do
while $c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}<\mathcal{M}$ do
$j=j+1$
$j=j+1$
$y_{(i, b,[I, j])}=c-\left(x_{k}^{+}\right)^{b}$
$y_{(i, b,[I, j])}=c-\left(x_{k}^{+}\right)^{b}$
$j=j+1$
$j=j+1$
$y_{(i, b,[I, j])}=c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}$
$y_{(i, b,[I, j])}=c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}$
if $i+1<m$ then
if $i+1<m$ then
Findpairs ${ }_{<m}\left(i+1, x_{k}^{+}, j-1\right)$
Findpairs ${ }_{<m}\left(i+1, x_{k}^{+}, j-1\right)$
Findpairs $_{<m}\left(i+1, x_{k}^{-}, j\right)$
Findpairs $_{<m}\left(i+1, x_{k}^{-}, j\right)$
else
else
Findpairs $_{=m}\left(x_{k}^{+}, j-1\right)$
Findpairs $_{=m}\left(x_{k}^{+}, j-1\right)$
Findpairs $=m\left(x_{k}^{-}, j\right)$
Findpairs $=m\left(x_{k}^{-}, j\right)$
$k=k+1$
$k=k+1$
$x_{k}^{+}=x_{0}+k$
$x_{k}^{+}=x_{0}+k$
$x_{k}^{-}=x_{0}-k$
$x_{k}^{-}=x_{0}-k$
Function Findpairsn (c, I)
Function Findpairsn (c, I)
for $-\mathcal{M} \leq k \leq \mathcal{M}$ do
for $-\mathcal{M} \leq k \leq \mathcal{M}$ do
$y_{(m, k, I)}=k$
$y_{(m, k, I)}=k$
$s_{(k, I)}=c-k$

```
            \(s_{(k, I)}=c-k\)
```

Theorem 5.4.2. Algorithm 3 finds all solutions to the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots\right)^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=u \tag{5.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\left|a_{i}\right| \leq \mathcal{M}$ and $b_{i} \in\{3,5, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}, i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ in at most $\mathcal{O}\left((2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m}(1+2 \mathcal{M})\right)$ steps.

Proof. By setting $\left.X_{1}:=\left(\ldots\left(s+a_{1}\right)^{b_{1}}+a_{2}\right)^{b_{2}}+\cdots+a_{m-1}\right)$ we can write equation (5.17) as

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{1}^{b_{m-1}}+a_{m}=u \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

First, the algorithm executes Findpairs ${ }_{<m}(1, u, 0)$, which finds all values for $X_{1} \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a_{m} \in\{-M, \ldots, M\}$ solving (5.18) as follows: We successively choose an integer $b \in\{3,5, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$ for the exponent, thus solving the equation for every possible $b_{m-1}$. Since we require $-\mathcal{M}<a_{m}<\mathcal{M}$ and $a_{m}=u-X_{1}^{b_{m-1}}$, we find all possible $X_{1}$ by setting $x_{0}=\left\lfloor c^{1 / b}\right\rfloor$ and finding all possible $x_{k}^{+,-}=x_{0} \pm k, k \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $-\mathcal{M}<$ $u-\left(x_{k}^{+,-}\right)^{b}<\mathcal{M}$. By writing $X_{1}=X_{2}^{b_{m-2}}+a_{m-1}$, we can find solutions for $X_{2}, b_{m-2}$ and $a_{m-1}$ the same way as above, thus every solution for $X_{1}$ is a new input for a function Findpairs $<m\left(2, X_{1}, I\right)$. Hence, for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m-2\}$ we find solutions for $X_{i}=X_{i+1}^{b_{m-i-1}}+a_{m-i}$, and it takes $2 \mathcal{M}$ steps for the function Findpairs $=m$ to find all $s, a_{1}$ with $X_{m-1}=s+a_{1}$. Now we need to bound the number of steps of the algorithm. By definition $x_{0}=\left\lfloor c^{1 / b}\right\rfloor \leq c^{1 / b}$ and thus $c-x_{0}^{b} \geq 0$. This gives us a chain of $\left(c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}\right)$ with $k \in\{1, \ldots, K\}$ such that $K$ is maximal with $\left(c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}\right)<\mathcal{M}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq\left(c-\left(x_{0}^{-}\right)^{b}\right)<\left(c-\left(x_{1}^{-}\right)^{b}\right)<\cdots<\left(c-\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}\right)<\mathcal{M} \Leftrightarrow \\
-c & \leq-\left(x_{0}^{-}\right)^{b}<-\left(x_{1}^{-}\right)^{b}<\cdots<\left(x_{k}^{-}\right)^{b}<\mathcal{M}-c .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence the number the while loop is executing is equal to $\sqrt[b]{\mathcal{M}-c}-\sqrt[b]{-c}$ and this is bounded from above by $2 \sqrt[b]{M}$. Since $b \in\{3,5, \ldots, \mathcal{B}\}$, we get an upper bound

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}}+2 \sqrt[5]{\mathcal{M}}+\cdots+2 \sqrt[\beta]{\mathcal{M}} \leq \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}} \tag{5.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the number of steps of a single Findpairs ${ }_{<m}$ function. Every Findpairs ${ }_{<m}$ calls again two Findpairs ${ }_{<m}$ and after $m-1$ nested calls Findpairs $=m$, this gives us at most

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=0}^{m-1}(2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{i}+(2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m} 2 \mathcal{M} & =\frac{(2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m}-1}{2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}}-1}+(2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m} 2 \mathcal{M} \\
& <(2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m}(1+2 \mathcal{M})
\end{aligned}
$$

many steps.

First of all, note that Algorithm 3 finds in fact the secret $s$, meaning that the knowledge of the parameters $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is obsolete for breaking the protocol. If the $y_{\left(i, b,\left[I_{1}, I_{2}\right]\right)}$ are stored, however, a solution to (5.15) can be given as follows: Choose some $\left(b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m-1}\right) \in$ $(\mathcal{B}(R))^{m-1}$. Further choose indices $I_{j} \in \mathbb{N}$ and some $k \in[-\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{M}]$ such that the elements of

$$
\mathbf{y}:=\left(y_{\left(1, b_{m-1},\left[I_{1}, I_{2}\right]\right)}, y_{\left.\left(2, b_{m-2},\left[I_{2}, I_{3}\right]\right), \ldots, y_{\left(m-2, b_{m-1},\left[I_{m-2}, I_{m-1}\right]\right.}, y_{\left(m-1, b_{m-2},\left[I_{m-1}, I_{m}\right]\right)}, y_{\left(m, k, I_{m}\right)}\right)}\right.
$$

are in the output of Algorithm 3. Then the chosen $b_{i}$ together with $\mathbf{a}=\mathbf{y}$ form a solution.
A disadvantage that the algorithm suffers is that the runtime depends on the knowledge of $m$. If $m$ is known, it can be executed as above, leading to as many as $\mathcal{O}\left((2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m}(1+\right.$ $2 \mathcal{M})$ ) solutions to equation (5.15). If $m$ is not known, an adversary has to run the algorithm above for every $\hat{m} \leq m$ and then check for all such $\hat{m}$, if the result matches the parameters of the protocol.
Any perfect power with odd exponent in the interval $[u-\mathcal{M}, u+\mathcal{M}]$ is a solution to (5.16). If Algorithm 3 would be set not to loop over all $b \in \mathcal{B}(R)$ but over perfect powers in this interval, the runtime would be asymptotically the same, as we can see in Proposition 5.4.3. This also shows that the upper bound in (5.19) could instead be estimated asymptotically as $2 \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}}$. The proof of the following proposition is a modification of the proof of [31, Theorem 1].

Proposition 5.4.3. Let $u \in \mathbb{Z}, K \in \mathbb{N}$ and define

$$
P(u, K)=\{x \in[u-K, u+K] \mid x \text { is a perfect power with odd exponent } e \leq \mathcal{B}\} .
$$

Then $|P(u, K)| \approx \sqrt[3]{u+K}-\sqrt[3]{u-K} \leq 2 \sqrt[3]{K}$.
Proof. Let $N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x)$ denote the set of perfect powers less than or equal to $x$, where the exponent is odd and at most $\mathcal{B}$. It suffices to show that $\left|N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x)\right| \approx \sqrt[3]{x}$. Since we can easily compute the exact size of $N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x)$ for small $x$, we can assume that $\mathcal{B} \geq 3$ and $x \geq 8$. Next, we define the sets $A_{n}(x):=\left\{k^{n} \mid k \in \mathbb{N}, k^{n} \leq x\right\}$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and set $M:=\left\lfloor\log _{2} x\right\rfloor-\left[\left\lfloor\log _{2} x\right\rfloor\right.$ is even], where [•] is the Iverson bracket, cf. [16]. Then $2^{M} \in A_{M}(x)$ and $2^{M+1} \notin A_{M+1}(x)$ because $2^{M+1}>x$, so

$$
M^{\prime}:=\max \left\{m \in \mathbb{N} \mid \varnothing \neq A_{m}(x) \subseteq N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x)\right\}= \begin{cases}M, & \text { if } M<\mathcal{B} \\ \mathcal{B}, & \text { if } M \geq \mathcal{B}\end{cases}
$$

The elements of $N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x)$ are all in some $A_{n}(x)$ for $n \in\left\{1, \ldots, M^{\prime}\right\}$, hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x)=\bigcup_{\substack{n=3, n \text { odd }}}^{M^{\prime}} A_{n}(x) \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any set $A_{n}(x)$ contains $\lfloor\sqrt[n]{x}\rfloor$ elements, so with the assumption that $\mathcal{B} \geq 3$ and the fact that the union in (5.20) is in general not disjoint we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lfloor\sqrt[3]{x}\rfloor=A_{3}(x) \leq N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x) \leq \sum_{\substack{n=3, n \text { odd }}}^{M^{\prime}}\lfloor\sqrt[n]{x}\rfloor \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we can bound the sum on the right-hand side of (5.21) as follows:

$$
\sum_{\substack{n=3, n \text { odd }}}^{M^{\prime}}\lfloor\sqrt[n]{x}\rfloor \leq\lfloor\sqrt[3]{x}\rfloor+\sum_{n=4}^{M}\lfloor\sqrt[n]{x}\rfloor \leq\lfloor\sqrt[3]{x}\rfloor+\sum_{n=4}^{M} \sqrt[4]{x} \leq\lfloor\sqrt[3]{x}\rfloor+\sqrt[4]{x}(M-2)
$$

and by L'Hospitals rule we get
hence $N_{3}^{\mathcal{B}}(x) \rightarrow \sqrt[3]{x}$ for $x \rightarrow \infty$.

### 5.4.2 Choosing a Diagonal Polynomial

In order to make the protocol in chapter 5.1 secure, the polynomial $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ has to be chosen such that $f=0$ is hard to solve. Other than that, an efficient way for calculating a solution $\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ when defining the polynomial in the first step of the key-exchange is required, as well as a representation of the polynomial with feasible bit length in respect of an implementation. For all this, Hirata-Kohno and Pethő suggest to choose a diagonal polynomial of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
f=c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+\ldots+c_{n} X_{n}^{d_{n}}+c_{0}, \tag{5.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{n} \geq 2$.

```
Algorithm 4: Construct a diagonal polynomial \(f\) and an \(\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}\) with \(f(r)=0\).
    Input \(: v, M \in \mathbb{N}\)
    Choose \(d_{1} \in\{2, \ldots, M\}\)
    for \(2 \leq i \leq n\) do
        Choose \(d_{i} \in\left\{d_{i-1}, \ldots, M\right\}\)
    Choose \(r_{i}^{\prime} \in\left\{-2^{v}, \ldots, 2^{v}\right\}\) for \(\{1, \ldots, n\}\)
    if \(\left(r_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, r_{n}^{\prime}\right)=\mathbf{0}\) then
        go to 4
    Choose \(c_{m+1} \in\left\{-2^{v}, \ldots, 2^{v}\right\} \backslash\{0\}\)
    \(d=\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, r_{n}^{\prime}\right)\)
    Set \(r_{i}=\frac{r_{i}^{\prime}}{d}\) for \(\{1, \ldots, n\}\)
    \(\mathbf{R}=\left(r_{1}^{d_{1}}, \ldots, r_{n}^{d_{n}}\right)^{t}\)
    Let \(\mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{i}} \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}, i \in\{0, \ldots, n\}\) with \(\left(\mathbf{y}_{0}{ }^{t}+q_{1}^{\prime} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{1}}{ }^{t}+\cdots+q_{n}^{\prime} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{n}}{ }^{t}\right) \mathbf{R}=c_{m+1}\)
        for any \(q_{i}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{Z}\) for \(\{1, \ldots, n\}\)
    Choose \(q_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}\) for \(\{1, \ldots, n\}\)
    \(\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{m}\right)=\mathbf{y}_{0}{ }^{t}+q_{1} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{1}}{ }^{t}+\cdots+q_{n} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{n}}{ }^{t}\)
    \(\mathbf{r}=\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)\)
    \(f=c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+\ldots+c_{n} X_{n}^{d_{n}}+c_{m+1}\)
```

The idea of Algorithm 4 is to set the exponents and to choose a solution for the diagonal polynomial in a certain way, then use the solvability of linear Diophantine equations to compute the coefficients for $f$. The way this is done, there are infinitely many $n$-tuples of coefficients for fixed exponents and $\mathbf{r}$ with $f(\mathbf{r})=0$.

Lemma 5.4.4. Let $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be given by

$$
f=c_{1} X_{1}+c_{2} X_{2}+\cdots+c_{n} X_{n}
$$

with $c_{i} \neq 0$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and let $c_{0} \in \mathbb{Z} \backslash\{0\}$. Then the Diophantine equation $f-c_{0}=0$ is solvable if and only if $\mathrm{gcd}\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}\right) \mid c_{0}$.

Proof. Let $d=\operatorname{gcd}\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}\right)$. First, assume that that there are some $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n} \in \mathbb{Z}$ with

$$
c_{1} a_{1}+\cdots+c_{n} a_{n}=c_{0} .
$$

Then $d \mid c_{1} a_{1}+\cdots+c_{n} a_{n}$ and thus $d \mid c_{0}$. For the other direction, assume now that $d \mid c_{0}$. We claim that there exist some $a_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, a_{n}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$
c_{1} a_{1}^{\prime}+\cdots+c_{n} a_{n}^{\prime}=d
$$

We prove this by induction on $n$. For $n=2$ the lemma follows from the well-known Euclidean algorithm. So assume that $n>2$ and let $d^{\prime}=\operatorname{gcd}\left(c_{1}, \ldots c_{n-1}\right)$. By the induction hypothesis there are some $a_{1}^{\prime \prime}, \ldots, a_{n}^{\prime \prime} \in \mathbb{Z}$ with

$$
c_{1} a_{1}^{\prime \prime}+\cdots+c_{n-1} a_{n-1}^{\prime \prime}=d^{\prime}
$$

Since

$$
d=\operatorname{gcd}\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{n}\right)=\operatorname{gcd}\left(\operatorname{gcd}\left(c_{1}, \ldots c_{n-1}\right), c_{n}\right),
$$

there are some $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ with

$$
d=a d^{\prime}+b c_{n}=a\left(c_{1} a_{1}^{\prime \prime}+\cdots+c_{n-1} a_{n-1}^{\prime \prime}\right)+b c_{n}
$$

hence our claim is proved. By multiplying $\frac{c_{0}}{d} \in \mathbb{Z}$ to (15), we obtain some $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n} \in \mathbb{Z}$ with

$$
c_{1} a_{1}+\cdots+c_{n} a_{n}=c_{0} .
$$

Theorem 5.4.5. Algorithm 4 finds a pair ( $f, \mathbf{r}$ ) with

$$
f=c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+\ldots+c_{n} X_{n}^{d_{n}}+c_{0} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]
$$

and $f(\mathbf{r})$ in polynomial time.
Proof. We start the proof by noting that the term 'Choose' in Algorithm 4 stands for a choice at random. At the start of the algorithm we choose the exponents $d_{i}$ such that $2 \leq d_{1} \leq \ldots \leq d_{n} \leq M$. Further we fix $c_{m+1}, r_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, r_{n}^{\prime}$ for some given bound. The if-statement in line 5 ensures that $0 \neq d=\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, r_{n}^{\prime}\right)$. Since $r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}$ are set such that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=1$ we have $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}^{d_{1}}, \ldots, r_{n}^{d_{n}}\right)=1$, hence the linear Diophantine equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{0}=c_{1} r_{1}^{d_{1}}+\cdots+c_{1} r_{n}^{d_{n}} \tag{5.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

is solvable by Lemma 5.4-4. For solving this equation in polynomial time, we can use an algorithm introduced in [10], giving us $\mathbf{y}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{n}} \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ such that

$$
\left(\mathbf{y}_{0}{ }^{t}+q_{1} \mathbf{y}_{1}{ }^{t}+\cdots+q_{n} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{n}}{ }^{t}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1}^{d_{1}} \\
\vdots \\
r_{n}^{d_{n}}
\end{array}\right)=c_{m+1}
$$

for any $q_{1} \ldots, q_{n} \in \mathbb{Z}$. By fixing the $q_{i}$ we can set $\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{m}\right)=\mathbf{y}_{0}{ }^{t}+q_{1} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{1}}{ }^{t}+\cdots+q_{n} \mathbf{y}_{\mathbf{n}}{ }^{t}$ and hence we have both $f$ and $\mathbf{r}$ with $f(\mathbf{r})=0$.

Special cases of the Diophantine equation of diagonal form (5.22) have been studied extensively. First consider equations of the form $X_{j}^{2}+C=X_{i}^{n}$, which have only finitely many solutions. In fact, for any $C$ there is a computable $K(C)$ bounding all possible values for $X_{j}$. In practice, however, this bound is too large to solve the equation in a feasible amount of time by considering all $X_{j}$ in this bound. Another special case of (5.22) is given by $X_{j}^{2}+c_{i} X_{i}^{2}=m$. This equation has infinitely many solutions. It is the Diophantine equation the OSS-Scheme in 4.1 is built on, and as we have seen, it can be solved quickly. However, unlike in the case of the OSS-scheme, only the solution $\mathbf{r}$ or $m$ different solutions would break the protocol, as we have seen in Proposition 5.2.3, so we need control on the solutions of the equation $X_{j}^{2}+c_{i} X_{i}^{2}=m$. The fastest known way of finding a general solution is only pseudo-polynomial in $c_{i}$. In fact, if we set $c_{1}=1, c_{2}=-1$, input any values for $X_{k}$ for $k>2$ and set $d_{1}=d_{2}=2$, the resulting equation is of the form $X_{1}^{2}-X_{2}^{2}=n$. Finding solutions to this is as hard as factoring $n$.

By Kerckhoffs principle, it is safe to assume that an attacker knows that the solution $\mathbf{r}$ to $f=0$ fulfills $\operatorname{gcd} \mathbf{r}=1$. To avoid a brute force attack, i.e. test whether

$$
c_{1} r_{1}^{d_{1}}+\cdots+c_{1} r_{n}^{d_{n}}-c_{0}=0
$$

for all possible $\mathbf{r}$ with $\left|r_{i}\right| \leq 2^{v / d_{i}}$, we need to choose $v$ larger than a certain bound.
Proposition 5.4.6. Let $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{n}, v \in \mathbb{N}$ with $d_{j}=\min _{k} d_{k}$ and $d_{i}=\max _{k} d_{k}$. The number of $n$-tuples $\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ such that $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=1$ and $\left|r_{i}\right|^{d_{i}} \leq 2^{v}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ is in the interval

$$
\left[\frac{2^{\frac{n(v+1)}{d_{i}}}}{\zeta(n)}, \frac{2^{\frac{(n+1) v}{d_{j}}}}{\zeta(n)}+\mathcal{O}\left(2^{\frac{(n-1))^{v+n}}{d_{j}}}\right)\right] .
$$

Proof. By the lemma in [32, page 1], the number $Z_{k}(t)$ of $k$-tuples $\mathbf{v} \in\{1, \ldots, t\}^{k}$ such that $\operatorname{gcd} \mathbf{v}=1$ is given by $t^{k} / \zeta(k)+\mathcal{O}\left(t^{k-1}\right)$. We denote by $Z\left(\chi_{1}, \ldots, \chi_{n}\right)$ the number of all all $n$-tuples $\mathbf{v}=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ with $\operatorname{gcd} v=1$ and $1 \leq v_{i} \leq \chi_{i}$ if $\chi_{i} \geq 0$ and $\chi_{i} \leq v_{i} \leq 0$ otherwise for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Then

$$
\frac{2^{\frac{n v}{d_{i}}}}{\zeta(n)} \leq Z\left(2^{\frac{v}{i_{i}}}, \ldots, 2^{\frac{v}{d_{i}}}\right) \leq Z\left(2^{\frac{v}{d_{1}}}, \ldots, 2^{\frac{v}{d_{m}}}\right) \leq Z\left(2^{\frac{v}{d_{j}}}, \ldots, 2^{\frac{v}{d_{j}}}\right) \leq \frac{2^{\frac{n v}{d_{j}}}}{\zeta(n)}+\mathcal{O}\left(2^{\frac{(n-1) v}{d_{j}}}\right)
$$

Next we consider $\hat{Z}_{k}(t)$, by which we denote the number of $k$-tuples $\mathbf{v} \in\{-t, \ldots, t\}^{k}$ such that $\operatorname{gcd} \mathbf{v}=1$. By the symmetry of the greatest common divisor, we have

$$
\hat{Z}_{n}(t)=\sum_{\chi_{1}, \ldots, \chi_{n} \in\{-t, t\}} Z\left(\chi_{1}, \ldots, \chi_{n}\right)=\sum_{l=0}^{n}\binom{n}{l} Z_{n}(t)=2^{n} Z_{n}(t),
$$

since the cases where any number of $v_{i}=0$ adds to the $\mathcal{O}\left(t^{n-1}\right)$ term of $Z_{n}(t)$. Replacing $Z$ with $\hat{Z}$ as we have replaced $Z_{k}$ with $\hat{Z}_{k}$ leads to the desired result: Let $\hat{Z}\left(\chi_{1}, \ldots, \chi_{n}\right)$ be the number of $n$-tuples $\mathbf{v}=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ with gcd $v=1$ and $\left|v_{i}\right| \leq \chi_{i}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Then

$$
2^{n} Z_{n}\left(2^{\frac{v}{d_{i}}}\right) \leq Z\left(2^{\frac{v}{d_{1}}}, \ldots, 2^{\frac{v}{d_{m}}}\right) \leq 2^{n} Z_{n}\left(2^{\frac{v}{d_{j}}}\right)
$$

To avoid an attack, $v$ has to be chosen such that the number of possibilities for $\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)$ is at least $2^{128}$. By the proposition above, this means that

$$
\frac{2^{\frac{n(v+1)}{d_{i}}}}{\zeta(n)} \geq 2^{128} \Leftrightarrow v \geq \frac{d_{j}}{n}\left(128+\log _{2}(\zeta(n))\right)-1,
$$

where $0<d_{j}=\max \left(d_{1}, \ldots, d_{n}\right)$. Further, Hirata and Pethő suggest to choose the $d_{i}$ to be small, namely $d_{i} \leq 7$. To omit trivial cases for $f$, we also require that $d_{i} \geq 2$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$.

### 5.4.3 The Diagonal Polynomial is Irreducible

Let $f$ be the diagonal polynomial from the previous section, and assume that $f$ is primitive, such that there is some $k \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ with

$$
d=\operatorname{gcd}\left(c_{1}, \ldots, c_{k-1}, c_{k+1}, \ldots, c_{n}, c_{0}\right)=1
$$

If $f$ is not of this form, we can change two coefficients of $f$ in order to bring it to this form. Indeed, since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=1$, there is some $r_{j}$ such that $d \nmid r_{j}$. For a fixed $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, setting

$$
c_{l}= \begin{cases}c_{l}+k r_{j}^{d_{j}} & : l=i \\ c_{l}-k r_{i}^{d_{i}} & : l=j \\ c_{l} & : l \in\{1, \ldots, n\} \backslash\{i, j\}\end{cases}
$$

for some $k \in \mathbb{Z} \backslash\{0\}$ still solves the equation (5.23), so this again gives a valid diagonal polynomial.
With the assumption above, we can therefore show that $f$ is in fact irreducible over $\mathbb{Z}$, excluding trivial attacks on the protocol by factoring $f$ into smaller factors which may be easy to solve. To show irreducibility of $f$, we use the following proposition, which states a well-known fact about irreducibility:

Proposition 5.4.7. Let $K$ be a field and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $n \geq 2$. Further let $a \in K^{*}$. Assume that for all prime numbers $p$ with $p \mid n$ we have a $\notin K^{p}$, and if $4 \mid n$ we have a $\notin-4 K^{4}$. Then

$$
X^{n}-a \in K[X]
$$

is irreducible over $K$.

Next we are going to need the following lemma:
Lemma 5.4.8. Let $c_{0}, c_{1}, \ldots, c_{k} \in \mathbb{Z} \backslash\{0\}$ and let

$$
g=c_{0}+c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+\cdots+c_{k} X_{k}^{d_{k}} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right]
$$

be primitive for some exponents $d_{i} \geq 2, i \in\{1, \ldots, k\}$. Then

$$
g \notin\left(\mathbb{Q}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right)\right)^{p} \text { and } g \notin-4\left(\mathbb{Q}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right)\right)^{4}
$$

for all prime numbers $p$.

Proof. Since $g$ is primitive, it suffices to show the lemma for $\mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right]$ instead of $\mathbb{Q}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right)$. So for the sake of a contradiction, assume that there is a polynomial $h \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right]$ such that $g=h^{p}$ for some prime $p$. As $c_{1} \neq 0$, we have that $M:=X_{1}^{d_{1} / p} \sqrt[p]{c_{1}}$ has to be a monomial appearing in $h$. Moreover, since $X_{1}^{d_{1}}$ is the highest $X_{1}$-term in $g, M$ is the highest $X_{1}$-term in $h$. The constant term of $g$ is not equal to zero, so the same has to hold for $h$. Let $0 \neq c=h(0)$. As $X_{1}^{d_{1}}$ is the only monomial in $g$ divisible by $X_{1}, M$ is the only monomial of $h$ divisible by $X_{1}$. But then $p c^{p-1} X_{1}^{d_{1} / p} \sqrt[p]{c_{1}} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right]$ is a monomial of $h^{p}=g$, a contradiction. We can show that $g \notin-4\left(\mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}\right]\right)^{4}$ along the same lines.

The assumption that $f$ is primitive and Gauss's lemma allow us to prove that $f$ is irreducible.

Theorem 5.4.9. Let

$$
f=c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+\ldots+c_{n} X_{n}^{d_{n}}+c_{0} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]
$$

be a polynomial that was constructed in Algorithm 4. Then $f$ is irreducible over $\mathbb{Z}$.

Proof. By our initial assumption and if necesarry after renumbering, we can write $f$ as $f=c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+g$ for a primitive $g \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. By Gauss's lemma, we can work in $\mathbb{Q}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ and thus $f$ is irreducible by Proposition 5.4.7 and Lemma 5.4.8.

### 5.4.4 Choosing a Non-diagonal Diophantine Equation

In Algorithm 4, an initially chosen solution $\mathbf{r}$ leads to a diagonal Diophantine equation via solving the linear equation

$$
c_{1} r_{1}^{d_{1}}+\cdots+c_{1} r_{n}^{d_{n}}=c_{0}
$$

for known $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{n}$ and $c_{0}$. This can be done efficiently by a multidimensional extension of the Euclidean algorithm. We can extend this idea to a more general class of Diophantine equations. Again we start by choosing a solution $\mathbf{r}=\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)$ with $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=1$ and some $c_{0} \in \mathbb{Z} \backslash\{0\}$. For some given $N \in \mathbb{N}$, we want to find $d_{i, j} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ and $c_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $i \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$ and $j \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, so that we can define an $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ with

$$
\begin{equation*}
f=c_{0}+\sum_{i=1}^{N} c_{i} X_{1}^{d_{i, 1}} \ldots X_{n}^{d_{i, n}} \tag{5.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $f(\mathbf{r})=0$. We can do this the following way:
Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=1$, we can find some nonempty multisets $R_{1}, \ldots, R_{K}$ for $K \in$ $\{2, \ldots, n\}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{1} \cup \ldots \cup R_{K} & =R \text { and } \\
\operatorname{gcd}\left(\prod_{r \in R_{1}} r, \ldots, \prod_{r \in R_{K}} r\right) & =1,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $R$ is the multiset $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right\}$. The union does not need to be disjoint. Then we can choose the exponents $d_{i, j} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ such that for every monomial $X_{i_{1}}^{\lambda_{1}} \cdots X_{i_{K}}^{\lambda_{K}}$ of $f$ we have $r_{i_{1}}, \ldots, r_{i_{k}} \in R_{j}$ for some $j \in\{1, \ldots, K\}$. Moreover, for all $j \in\{1, \ldots, K\}$, there has to be a monomial $X_{i_{1}}^{\lambda_{1}} \cdots X_{i_{k}}^{\lambda_{k}}$ in $f$ with $r_{i_{1}}, \ldots, r_{i_{k}} \in R_{j}$. With this exponents, the following proposition shows that we can choose the coefficients of $f$ the same way as we did in the previous section:

Proposition 5.4.10. Assume that $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ is given as above with $\mathbf{r}=\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \in$ $\mathbb{Z}^{n}$ and $\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=1$. Then

$$
\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}^{d_{1,1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{1, n}}, r_{1}^{d_{2,1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{2, n}}, \ldots, r_{1}^{d_{N, 1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{N, n}}\right)=1 .
$$

Proof. Let $R^{\prime}=\left\{r_{1}^{d_{1,1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{1, n}}, r_{1}^{d_{2,1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{2, n}}, \ldots, r_{1}^{d_{N, 1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{N, n}}\right\}$. Further let $r:=r_{1}^{d_{j, 1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{j, n}} \in$ $R^{\prime}$ and let $r_{j_{1}}, \ldots, r_{j_{l}}$ be the factors of $r$ with $d_{j, j_{1}}, \ldots, d_{j, j_{l}} \geq 1$. By the choice of the exponents as given above, we have $r_{j_{1}}, \ldots, r_{j_{l}} \in R_{s}$ for some $s \in\{1, \ldots, K\}$. This means that for every $R_{s}$, there is some $r_{1}^{d_{j, 1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{j, n}} \in R^{\prime}$ such that $r_{1}^{d_{j, 1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{j, n}} \mid \prod_{r \in R_{s}} r^{d_{j, 1} \cdots d_{j, n}}$. It follows that

$$
\operatorname{gcd}\left(r_{1}^{d_{1,1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{1, n}}, \ldots, r_{1}^{d_{N, 1}} \cdots r_{n}^{d_{N, n}}\right) \mid \operatorname{gcd}\left(\prod_{r \in R_{1}} r^{d_{1,1} \cdots d_{1, n}}, \ldots, \prod_{r \in R_{K}} r^{d_{N, 1} \cdots d_{N, n}}\right)=1 .
$$

proving the proposition.

Thus by defining $\mathbf{r}_{i}:=r_{1}^{d_{i, 1}} \ldots r_{n}^{d_{i, n}}$, we have the linear Diophantine equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{1} \mathbf{r}_{1}+\cdots+c_{N} \mathbf{r}_{N}+c_{0}=0 \tag{5.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

in the unknowns $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{N}$ which is easy to solve. As long as we have the monomials of $f$ corresponding to $\mathbf{r}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_{N}$ as constructed above, we can add any amount of arbitrary terms. Assume that we want to add the polynomial $g \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ to $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}, c_{1}, \ldots, c_{N}\right]$. We can do this by setting

$$
c_{0}^{\text {new }}:=c_{0}+g\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right),
$$

and solving equation (5.25) with $c_{0}^{\text {new }}$ instead of $c_{0}$. The partitioning of the multiset $R$ into $R_{1}, \ldots, R_{K}$ is assumed to be easy to compute, since $K \leq n$ is a small integer.

It is even possible to extend the approach above of constructing a Diophantine equation from a given solution to polynomials without a constant term. To see this, let $\mathbf{r}=$ $\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$, such that for some $A, B_{1}, \ldots, B_{m} \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}, d_{k, l} \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ with $k \in$ $\{1, \ldots, m+1\}, l \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and

$$
R_{0}=\prod_{i \in A} r_{i}^{d_{0, i}}, R_{j}=\prod_{i \in B_{j}} r_{i}^{d_{j, i}} \quad \text { for } j \in\{1, \ldots, m\}
$$

we have

$$
\operatorname{gcd}\left(R_{1}, \ldots, R_{m}\right) \mid R_{0}
$$

This allows us to find $c_{0}, c_{1}, \ldots, c_{m} \in \mathbb{Z}$ with

$$
c_{0} R_{0}+c_{1} R_{1}+\cdots+c_{m} R_{m}=0
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{0} X_{1}^{d_{0,1}} \ldots X_{n}^{d_{0, n}}+c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1,1}} \ldots X_{n}^{d_{1, n}}+\cdots+c_{m} X_{1}^{d_{m, 1}} \ldots X_{n}^{d_{m, n}}=0 \tag{5.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a Diophantine equation of the form $f=0$ without constant term and $f(\mathbf{r})=0$. However, this equation is not wise to use in the cryptographic protocol, since we have established in section 5.2 that the knowledge of any solutions to the Diophantine equation $f=0$ may decrease the security of the protocol. A trivial solution of (5.26) is always given by $\left(r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n}\right)=\mathbf{0}$, and if $f$ is not of the form $f=f^{\prime}+g$, where $g$ is a diagonal polynomial without constant term, than there are even infinitely many trivial solutions, which would break the protocol.

Comparing the general approach of a Diophantine equation $f=0$ where $f$ is given in (5.24) with the polynomial from the previous section, we see that the diagonal polynomial is a special case of this more general Diophantine equation with a very sparse representation. Other than that we have broader choice in equations and thus in public keys, by a weaker restriction on the number or structure of monomials.

### 5.4.5 Choosing a,b and $h$ over $\mathbb{Z}$

Let $f=c_{1} X_{1}^{d_{1}}+\ldots+c_{n} X_{n}^{d_{n}}+c_{0}$ be the Diophantine equation for the key exchange protocol performed over the integers, as constructed in the previous section. We still
need to define how to choose the other parameters and polynomials used in the protocol.

In 5.2 we established that the degree of $h^{\prime}$ is $\operatorname{deg} g b_{1} \ldots b_{m}$, meaning that the number of coefficients which are non-zero of the public key $h$ is about $\mathcal{O}\left(\left(\operatorname{deg} g \mathcal{B}^{m}\right)^{n}\right)$. This means that $\mathcal{B}, n$ and $m$ have to be small integers, and $g$ should be a linear or quadratic polynomial. Moreover, we have to expect that most of the coefficients of $h$ have a size of about $\mathcal{M}^{b_{1} \ldots b_{m}}$. By Theorem 3 we can break the protocol in $\mathcal{O}\left((2 \mathcal{B} \sqrt[3]{\mathcal{M}})^{m}(1+2 \mathcal{M})\right)$. To counter this, the parameters $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}$ should fulfill $\left|a_{i}\right| \geq 10^{8}$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$ and hence $\mathcal{M} \geq 10^{8}$.

One way of choosing $h \equiv h^{\prime} \bmod f$ is to pick a polynomial $V \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ at random and set $h=h^{\prime}+V f$. A very simple deterministic approach of computing a representative is the use of a pseudo-division algorithm for polynomials, as given by Knuth in [22].

Proposition 5.4.11. Let $R$ be a unique factorization domain, $u, v \in R[X]$ with

$$
u=u_{m} X^{m}+\cdots+u_{1} X+u_{0}, \quad v=v_{n} X^{n}+\cdots+v_{1} X+v_{0}
$$

such that $v_{n} \neq 0$ and $m \geq n \geq 0$. Then there are unique polynomials $q$ and $r$ such that

$$
v_{n}^{m-n+1} u=q v+r .
$$

Now choose some $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} g \geq 1, \operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} f \geq 1$ and note that $\tilde{R}:=R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{i-1}, X_{i+1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ is a unique factorization domain and $\tilde{R}\left[X_{i}\right]=$ $R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. We have $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} f=d_{i} \leq 7$ and $k_{i}:=\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} h^{\prime} \geq\left(b_{1} \ldots b_{m}\right)$ so $k_{i} \geq d_{i} \geq 0$. With the above proposition, there are some $q, r \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ such that

$$
c_{i}^{k_{i}-d_{i}+1} h^{\prime}=q f+r \Leftrightarrow h^{\prime}=q f+r-\left(c_{i}^{k_{i}-d_{i}+1}-1\right) h^{\prime}
$$

and thus $h^{\prime} \equiv r-\left(c_{i}^{k_{i}-d_{i}+1}-1\right) h^{\prime} \bmod f$, where $c_{i}$ is the leading coefficient of $h^{\prime} \in$ $\tilde{R}\left[X_{i}\right]$. The remainder $r$ can be found with any polynomial division algorithm, since then factor $v_{n}^{m-n+1}$ in the above proposition, which corresponds to $c_{i}^{k_{i}-d_{i}+1}$, was chosen such that any division performed in such an algorithm stays within the chosen ring, thus in $\mathbb{Z}$. Both the deterministic and the random approach of choosing the representant $h \equiv h^{\prime}$ $\bmod (f)$ can be done very fast. However, the random approach has the advantage of not adding any information about the structure of $h$. With the deterministic approach, an adversary could obtain more information in order to calculate any parameters which are kept secret.

### 5.4.6 An Example over $\mathbb{Z}$

As a first example, we use the smallest possible $n$, namely $n=3$ and work over $\mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$. Assume that Alice chooses some $\mathbf{r}=(9,7,5), c_{4}=313$ and the exponents $\left(d_{1}, d_{2}, d_{3}\right)=(3,5,7)$. By Algorithm 4 , the polynomial $f$ is constructed by solving the linear Diophantine equation

$$
c_{1} 9^{3}+c_{2} 7^{3}+c_{3} 5^{7}=313
$$

Since $\operatorname{gcd} \mathbf{r}=1$, this equation has infinitely many solutions. Alice picks one such solution and thus retrieves $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
f & =c_{1} X_{1}^{3}+c_{2} X_{2}^{3}+c_{3} X_{3}^{7}-c 4 \\
c_{1} & =201, c_{2}=10042812, c_{3}=-2160508 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Bob selects a quadratic polynomial $g=X_{1}^{2}+X_{2} X_{3} \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$. With the minimal choice for $m$ and $b_{1}, b_{2}, b_{3}$ and the small $a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}$, which are clearly impractical to use in a protocol by Theorem 5.4.2 due to security reasons, he is given

$$
\begin{aligned}
& m=3 \\
& b_{1}=b_{2}=b_{3}=3, \\
& a_{1}=131, a_{2}=250, a_{3}=-19 \text { and } \\
& h^{\prime}=\left(\left(\left(X_{1}^{2}+X_{2} X_{3}+131\right)^{3}+250\right)^{3}-19\right)^{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

to compute $h \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right] /(f)$. With the fairly small parameters, $h^{\prime}$ is already very large. It is made up of 406 monomials, and the arithmetic mean of the coefficients is $5.44 \cdot 10^{54}$. The internal storage used for $h^{\prime}$ alone is 95.60 kilobytes in Mathematica. We set $h=h^{\prime}+f$.
With the knowledge of $g$ and $h$, Alice computes

$$
\begin{aligned}
s=g(9,7,5)= & 116, \\
u=h(9,7,5)= & 400758352336691378193916217914839 \\
& 12288884256394373438362807024520 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, Bob can retrieve the secret $s$ by computing

$$
s=\left(\left(u^{1 / 3}+19\right)^{1 / 3}-250\right)^{1 / 3}-131=116 .
$$

Taking into account the lower and upper bounds for all parameters established in section $5 \cdot 4 \cdot 5$, we look at the size of parameters with larger $f$ and $a_{i}$. Again, let $m=n=3$. For the construction of $f$ via Algorithm 4, a lower bound for $v$ is given by

$$
v \geq \frac{d_{\max }}{n}\left(128+\log _{2}(\zeta(n))-1=\frac{7}{3}\left(128+\log _{2}(\zeta(3))\right)-1 \approx 298.286\right.
$$

so we choose $v=299$. This gives the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|r_{1}\right| \leq 2^{\frac{299}{3}} \approx 1.00 \cdot 10^{30},\left|r_{2}\right| \leq 2^{\frac{299}{5}} \approx 1.00 \cdot 10^{18}, \\
& \left|r_{3}\right| \leq 2^{\frac{299}{7}} \approx 7.21 \cdot 10^{12},\left|c_{4}\right| \leq 2^{299} \approx 1.01 \cdot 10^{90} .
\end{aligned}
$$

So assume that Alice chooses coprime $r_{1}, r_{2}, r_{3}$ and $c_{4}$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& r_{1}=214524320291525612533021757155, \\
& r_{2}=-907194993065307412, \\
& r_{3}=-67353381470, \\
& c_{4}=412758574673874772 .
\end{aligned}
$$

This leads again to infinitely many possible coefficients $c_{1}, c_{2}, c_{3}$. Alice selects such a tuple, and thus $f$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
f & =c_{1} X_{1}^{3}+c_{2} X_{2}^{3}+c_{3} X_{3}^{7}-c 4 \\
c_{1} & =-216075779524989596501529484579175432832572228 \\
c_{2} & =-3471622298075298163934975161534718691459421 \\
c_{3} & =-47875172606803782836928827504389477492012204
\end{aligned}
$$

This choice of coefficients minimizes $\left|c_{1}\right|+\left|c_{2}\right|+\left|c_{3}\right|$, however it is a hard problem in general to find this minimum. For the choice of $h^{\prime}$, assume again that $b_{1}=b_{2}=b_{3}=3$ and use the same polynomial $g$. The minimal size for the $a_{i}$ is given by $10^{8}$, so let $h^{\prime}$ be given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
h^{\prime} & =\left(\left(\left(X_{1}^{2}+X_{2} X_{3}+a_{1}\right)^{3}+a_{2}\right)^{3}-a_{3}\right)^{3} \text { with } \\
a_{1} & =38751531, \\
a_{2} & =-849101056 \text { and } \\
a_{3} & =26893070 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Despite the increased size of the $a_{i}$, the internal storage used for $h^{\prime}$ by Mathematica is almost the same as before with 103.96 kilobytes.
The size of $h^{\prime}$ and thus $h$ changes dramatically when $m$ or $n$ is increased. Indeed, as we have shown in 5.2, the degree of $h^{\prime}$ grows exponentially in $n$ and $m$. So assume that $m=n=4$ and let

$$
\begin{aligned}
g & =X_{1}^{2}+X_{2} X_{3}+X_{4}, \\
h^{\prime} & =\left(\left(\left(g^{3}+250\right)^{3}-19\right)^{3}-77\right)^{3} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $h^{\prime}$ consists of 95284 monomials, and the internal storage of $h^{\prime}$ takes 29.27 megabytes.

## 6 Conclusions

The security of the key agreement protocol by Harry Yosh is based on the hardness of solving a system of higher degree Diophantine equations. Unlike with other cryptosystems based on Diophantine equations, Alice can choose the polynomial $f$ fully arbitrarily. Although it is true that no general algorithm for solving such equations exist, there are many equations which are easy to solve. Hence the polynomial $f$ must be chosen carefully, as it was done in 5.3.1 and 5.4.2.
Like in the Diffie-Hellman key exchange, both participants of the protocol are involved in setting the secret $s$, with Alice choosing an $\mathbf{r} \in R^{n}$ and Bob choosing some $g \in R\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$, resulting in $g(\mathbf{r})=s$. However, they both need an extra step in exchanging the secret compared to other protocols, which is not only a disadvantage in efficiency, but also may cause a vulnerability of the security, since $f, g, h$ and $u$ are all publicly available.
The main drawback of the protocol is the amount of data that needs to be stored and transmitted. First consider the polynomial $f$. In 5.3.1, the polynomial is chosen to be of the form $f=A+B-\gamma$, where $A$ and $B$ are polynomials omitting to a sparse representation, however we cannot control the size of $\gamma \in \mathbb{F}_{q}$. In order to enable the hardness of solving the equation $f=0$ when $f$ is constructed to fulfill the requirements of 3.4.1, we need to choose $q \geq 2^{127}$.
Over the integers, by taking the sparse representation, the polynomial $f \in \mathbb{Z}\left[X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ has only $n+1$ many terms. However, the size of the coefficients may be very large, even with the use of [10] in Algorithm 4, which tries to keep the coefficients small. Next we consider the polynomial $h$. As we have established in 5.2 , the degree of $h^{\prime}$ is $t b_{1} \ldots b_{m}$ and the number of non-zero coefficients is about $\mathcal{O}\left(t_{1} \ldots t_{n}\left(b_{1} \ldots b_{m}\right)^{n}\right)$, where $t=\operatorname{deg} g$ and $t_{i}=\operatorname{deg}_{x_{i}} g$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. Hirata-Kohno and Pethő suggest to control the degree of one variable $X_{i}$ through the choice of the representant $h$, in the best case however, this gives $\mathcal{O}\left(t_{1} \ldots t_{n}\left(b_{1} \ldots b_{m}\right)^{n-1}\right)$ coefficients in $h$. Furthermore over the integers, small $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}$ would lead to insecurity, so they have to be chosen relatively large. For a as part of a protocol, assume that $a=\max \left\{\left|a_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|a_{m}\right|\right\}$. We have to expect that most coefficients of $h^{\prime}$ have the size $a^{b_{1} \ldots b_{m}}$. We set $a=10^{8}, m=n=3$, $b_{1}=b_{2}=b_{3}=3$ and $\operatorname{deg}_{X_{i}} g=1$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$, corresponding to a minimal choice of the parameters. With this we still have to transmit about 1000 coefficients of the size $10^{72}$.
Compared to other public key cryptosystems like RSA for key transmission or DiffieHellman, the number of steps which are needed to be performed in order to agree on a secret is fairly large as well. We can therefore say that, as long as key agreement protocols based on integer factorization or the discrete logarithm problem remain unbroken, the protocol by Harry Yosh provides a secure yet resource-intensive alternative.

## Bibliography

[1] Sanjeev Arora and Boaz Barak. Computational complexity: a modern approach. Cambridge University Press, 2009 (cit. on p. 5).
[2] M. A. Asbullah and M. R. K. Ariffin. "Pre-conditions For Designing Asymmetric Cryptosystem Based On Diophantine Equation Hard Problem." In: 2012, pp. 198203 (cit. on p. 53).
[3] A. Bérczes, J. Folláth, and A. Pethő. "On a family of collision-free functions." In: Tatra Mountains Math. Publ. 47.3 (2010), pp. 1-13 (cit. on p. 44).
[4] Daniel J. Bernstein. "Detecting Perfect Powers In Essentially Linear Time." In: Math. Comp 67 (1998), pp. 1253-1283 (cit. on p. 70).
[5] Antonio Cafure and Guillermo Matera. "Improved explicit estimates on the number of solutions of equations over a finite field." In: Finite Fields and Their Applications 12.2 (2006), pp. 155-185 (cit. on pp. 28, 35, 38).
[6] Henri Cohen. Number theory. Volume I. , Tools and diophantine equations. Graduate Texts in Mathematics. New York: Springer, 2007. ISBN: 978-0-387-49922-2.
[7] JHE Cohn. "The Diophantine equation $x^{2}+C=y^{n}$." In: Acta Arith 65.4 (1993), pp. 367-381.
[8] Thomas W. Cusick. "Cryptanalysis of a Public Key System Based on Diophantine Equations." In: Inf. Process. Lett. 56.2 (Oct. 1995), pp. 73-75. IssN: 0020-0190 (cit. on p. 52).
[9] Davis, Matijasevic, and Robinson. "Hilbert's Tenth Problem. Diophantine Equations: Positive Aspects of a Negative Solution." In: Mathematical Developments Arising from Hilbert Problems, American Mathematical Society, 1976, 2 vols. Vol. 2. 1976 (cit. on pp. 1, 3).
[10] Hamid Esmaeili. "Short solutions for a linear Diophantine equation." In: Lecturas Matemáticas 27 (2006), pp. 5-16 (cit. on pp. 76, 84).
[11] W. Fulton. Algebraic curves: an introduction to algebraic geometry. Advanced book classics. Addison-Wesley Pub. Co., Advanced Book Program, 1989 (cit. on pp. 33, 34).
[12] W. Fulton. Intersection Theory. Ergebnisse Der Mathematik Und Ihrer Grenzgebiete, 3. Folge, Bd. 2. Springer-Verlag GmbH, 1998 (cit. on p. 28).
[13] Shuhong Gao and Raymond Heindl. "Multivariate public key cryptosystems from diophantine equations." In: Designs, Codes and Cryptography 67.1 (2013), pp. 1-18 (cit. on p. 54).
[14] Michael R. Garey and David S. Johnson. Computers and Intractability; A Guide to the Theory of NP-Completeness. New York, NY, USA: W. H. Freeman \& Co., 1990. ISBN: 0716710455 (cit. on p. 65).
[15] Andreas Gathmann. "Algebraic geometry." In: University of Kaiserslautern (2003).
[16] Ronald L. Graham, Donald E. Knuth, and Oren Patashnik. Concrete Mathematics: A Foundation for Computer Science. 2nd. Boston, MA, USA: Addison-Wesley Longman Publishing Co., Inc., 1994. ISBN: 0201558025 (cit. on p. 73).
[17] J. Heintz and C. P. Schnorr. "Testing Polynomials Which Are Easy to Compute (Extended Abstract)." In: Proceedings of the Twelfth Annual ACM Symposium on Theory of Computing. STOC '80. 1980, pp. 262-272 (cit. on p. 28).
[18] Noriko Hirata-Kohno and Attila Pethő. "On a key exchange protocol based on Diophantine equations." In: () (cit. on pp. 1, 58, 66).
[19] Ellis Horowitz and Sartaj Sahni. "The computation of powers of symbolic polynomials." In: SIAM Journal on Computing 4.2 (1975), pp. 201-208 (cit. on p. 63).
[20] James P Jones and YV Matuasevic. "Proof of Recursive Unsolvability of Hilbert's Tenth Problem." In: American Mathematical Monthly 98.8 (1991), pp. 689-709.
[21] Erich Kaltofen. "Effective Noether irreducibility forms and applications." In: Journal of Computer and System Sciences 50.2 (1995), pp. 274-295 (cit. on p. 38).
[22] Donald E. Knuth. The Art of Computer Programming. Vol. 2: Seminumerical Algorithms. 2nd ed. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1988 (cit. on p. 81).
[23] D. Lazard. "Solving zero-dimensional algebraic systems." In: Journal of Symbolic Computation 13.2 (1992), pp. 117-131 (cit. on p. 62).
[24] C. H. Lin et al. "A New Public-Key Cipher System Based Upon the Diophantine Equations." In: IEEE Trans. Comp 44 (1995), pp. 13-19 (cit. on p. 51).
[25] Yu. I. Manin. A course in mathematical logic for mathematicians. Second. Vol. 53. Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, New York, 2010 (cit. on pp. 3, 7).
[26] Alfred J. Menezes, Scott A. Vanstone, and Paul C. Van Oorschot. Handbook of Applied Cryptography. 1st. Boca Raton, FL, USA: CRC Press, Inc., 1996. isbn: o849385237.
[27] L.J. Mordell. Diophantine equations. Pure and Applied Mathematics. Elsevier Science, 1969. Isbn: 9780080873428.
[28] Ariffin M. R. K., Asbullah M. A., and Abu N. A. A $A_{\beta}$ Public Key Cryptosystem - An Asymmetric Cryptosystem based on the Diophantine Equation Hard Problem. [Online] Available as: http://http://eprint.iacr.org/2011/467.pdf (cit. on p. 54).
[29] David Naccache. "Can O.S.S. be Repaired? Proposal for a New Practical Signature Scheme." In: Advances in Cryptology - EUROCRYPT '93. Vol. 765. Lecture Notes in Computer Science. Springer, 1993, pp. 233-239 (cit. on p. 51).
[30] Jürgen Neukirch. Algebraische Zahlentheorie. Springer, 2006.
[31] MA Nyblom. "A counting function for the sequence of perfect powers." In: Australian Mathematical Society Gazette 33.5 (2006), pp. 338-343 (cit. on p. 73).
[32] J.E Nymann. "On the probability that $k$ positive integers are relatively prime." In: Journal of Number Theory 4.5 (1972), pp. 469 -473 (cit. on p. 76).
[33] H. Ong, C. P. Schnorr, and A. Shamir. "An Efficient Signature Scheme Based on Quadratic Equations." In: Proceedings of the Sixteenth Annual ACM Symposium on Theory of Computing. STOC '84. New York, NY, USA: ACM, 1984, pp. 208-216 (cit. on p. 49).
[34] J Pollard and C Schnorr. "An efficient solution of the congruence $x^{2}+k y^{2} \equiv m$ mod n." In: Information Theory, IEEE Transactions on 33.5 (1987), pp. 702-709 (cit. on p .50 ).
[35] Hans Riesel. Prime Numbers and Computer Methods for Factorization. Cambridge, MA, USA: Birkhauser Boston Inc., 1985. ISBN: 0-8176-3291-3.
[36] Wolfgang M Schmidt. "A lower bound for the number of solutions of equations over finite fields." In: Journal of Number Theory 6.6 (1974), pp. 448-480 (cit. on pp. 40, 42).
[37] Wolfgang M. Schmidt. Equations over finite fields. An elementary approach. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 536. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1976, pp. ix +276 (cit. on p. 35).
[38] T.N. Shorey and R. Tijdeman. Exponential Diophantine Equations. Cambridge Tracts in Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, 2008. ISBN: 9780521091701.
[39] Peter W Shor. "Algorithms for quantum computation: discrete logarithms and factoring." In: Foundations of Computer Science, 1994 Proceedings., 35th Annual Symposium on. IEEE. 1994, pp. 124-134 (cit. on p. 1).
[40] Robert I. Soare. Recursively enumerable sets and degrees. Perspectives in Mathematical Logic. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1987 (cit. on p. 7).
[41] André Weil. Sur les courbes algébriques et les variétés qui s'en déduisent. Actualités Sci. Ind., no. $1041=$ Publ. Inst. Math. Univ. Strasbourg 7 (1945). Hermann et Cie., Paris, 1948, pp. iv+85 (cit. on p. 34).
[42] Harry Yosh. "The key exchange cryptosystem used with higher order Diophantine equations." In: International Journal of Network Security E Its Applications 3.2 (2011) (cit. on pp. iv, $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{I}$ ).

